

# *P-2302R-P1 Series*

*VoIP ATA / Station Gateway*

## **User's Guide**

Version 3.60  
Edition 1  
5/2006

The logo for ZyXEL, featuring the word "ZyXEL" in a bold, blue, sans-serif font. The "Zy" is lowercase and the "XEL" is uppercase. The letters are closely spaced and have a slight shadow effect.



# Copyright

Copyright © 2006 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

## **Disclaimer**

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

## **Trademarks**

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

# Certifications

## Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy, and if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio/television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### Notice 1

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

### Viewing Certifications

- 1 Go to <http://www.zyxel.com>.
- 2 Select your product from the drop-down list box on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.





# Safety Warnings

For your safety, be sure to read and follow all warning notices and instructions.

- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel can service the device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Connect the power cord to the right supply voltage (110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them. Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power cord and do NOT locate the product where anyone can walk on the power cord.
- If you wall mount your device, make sure that no electrical, gas or water pipes will be damaged.
- Do NOT install nor use your device during a thunderstorm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Do NOT obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.

# ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

## Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind of character to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

## Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) for global products, or at [www.us.zyxel.com](http://www.us.zyxel.com) for North American products.

# Customer Support

Please have the following information ready when you contact customer support.

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

METHOD	SUPPORT E-MAIL	TELEPHONE <sup>A</sup>	WEB SITE	REGULAR MAIL
LOCATION	SALES E-MAIL	FAX	FTP SITE	
CORPORATE HEADQUARTERS (WORLDWIDE)	support@zyxel.com.tw	+886-3-578-3942	www.zyxel.com www.europe.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications Corp. 6 Innovation Road II Science Park Hsinchu 300 Taiwan
	sales@zyxel.com.tw	+886-3-578-2439	ftp.zyxel.com ftp.europe.zyxel.com	
CZECH REPUBLIC	info@cz.zyxel.com	+420-241-091-350	www.zyxel.cz	ZyXEL Communications Czech s.r.o. Modranská 621 143 01 Praha 4 - Modrany Ceská Republika
	info@cz.zyxel.com	+420-241-091-359		
DENMARK	support@zyxel.dk	+45-39-55-07-00	www.zyxel.dk	ZyXEL Communications A/S Columbusvej 2860 Soeborg Denmark
	sales@zyxel.dk	+45-39-55-07-07		
FINLAND	support@zyxel.fi	+358-9-4780-8411	www.zyxel.fi	ZyXEL Communications Oy Malminkaari 10 00700 Helsinki Finland
	sales@zyxel.fi	+358-9-4780 8448		
FRANCE	info@zyxel.fr	+33-4-72-52-97-97	www.zyxel.fr	ZyXEL France 1 rue des Vergers Bat. 1 / C 69760 Limonest France
		+33-4-72-52-19-20		
GERMANY	support@zyxel.de	+49-2405-6909-0	www.zyxel.de	ZyXEL Deutschland GmbH. Adenauerstr. 20/A2 D-52146 Wuerselen Germany
	sales@zyxel.de	+49-2405-6909-99		
HUNGARY	support@zyxel.hu	+36-1-3361649	www.zyxel.hu	ZyXEL Hungary 48, Zoldlomb Str. H-1025, Budapest Hungary
	info@zyxel.hu	+36-1-3259100		
KAZAKHSTAN	http://zyxel.kz/support	+7-3272-590-698	www.zyxel.kz	ZyXEL Kazakhstan 43, Dostyk ave., Office 414 Dostyk Business Centre 050010, Almaty Republic of Kazakhstan
	sales@zyxel.kz	+7-3272-590-689		
NORTH AMERICA	support@zyxel.com	1-800-255-4101 +1-714-632-0882	www.us.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications Inc. 1130 N. Miller St. Anaheim CA 92806-2001 U.S.A.
	sales@zyxel.com	+1-714-632-0858	ftp.us.zyxel.com	
NORWAY	support@zyxel.no	+47-22-80-61-80	www.zyxel.no	ZyXEL Communications A/S Niils Hansens vei 13 0667 Oslo Norway
	sales@zyxel.no	+47-22-80-61-81		

<b>METHOD</b>	<b>SUPPORT E-MAIL</b>	<b>TELEPHONE<sup>A</sup></b>	<b>WEB SITE</b>	<b>REGULAR MAIL</b>
<b>LOCATION</b>	<b>SALES E-MAIL</b>	<b>FAX</b>	<b>FTP SITE</b>	
<b>POLAND</b>	info@pl.zyxel.com	+48 (22) 333 8250	www.pl.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Communications ul. Okrzei 1A 03-715 Warszawa Poland
		+48 (22) 333 8251		
<b>RUSSIA</b>	http://zyxel.ru/support	+7-095-542-89-29	www.zyxel.ru	ZyXEL Russia Ostrovityanova 37a Str. Moscow, 117279 Russia
	sales@zyxel.ru	+7-095-542-89-25		
<b>SPAIN</b>	support@zyxel.es	+34-902-195-420	www.zyxel.es	ZyXEL Communications Arte, 21 5ª planta 28033 Madrid Spain
	sales@zyxel.es	+34-913-005-345		
<b>SWEDEN</b>	support@zyxel.se	+46-31-744-7700	www.zyxel.se	ZyXEL Communications A/S Sjöporten 4, 41764 Göteborg Sweden
	sales@zyxel.se	+46-31-744-7701		
<b>UKRAINE</b>	support@ua.zyxel.com	+380-44-247-69-78	www.ua.zyxel.com	ZyXEL Ukraine 13, Pimonenko Str. Kiev, 04050 Ukraine
	sales@ua.zyxel.com	+380-44-494-49-32		
<b>UNITED KINGDOM</b>	support@zyxel.co.uk	+44-1344 303044 08707 555779 (UK only)	www.zyxel.co.uk	ZyXEL Communications UK Ltd., 11 The Courtyard, Eastern Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 2XB, United Kingdom (UK)
	sales@zyxel.co.uk	+44-1344 303034	ftp.zyxel.co.uk	

a. "+" is the (prefix) number you enter to make an international telephone call.



# Table of Contents

<b>Copyright</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>Certifications</b> .....	<b>4</b>
<b>Safety Warnings</b> .....	<b>6</b>
<b>ZyXEL Limited Warranty</b> .....	<b>7</b>
<b>Customer Support</b> .....	<b>8</b>
<b>Table of Contents</b> .....	<b>11</b>
<b>List of Figures</b> .....	<b>19</b>
<b>List of Tables</b> .....	<b>23</b>
<b>Preface</b> .....	<b>27</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>Introducing the ZyXEL Device</b> .....	<b>29</b>
1.1 P-2302R-P1 VoIP ATA / Station Gateway Series Overview .....	29
1.2 P-2302RL-P1 VoIP ATA / Station Gateway with PSTN Line .....	29
1.3 Features .....	29
1.4 LEDs .....	34
1.5 Applications .....	36
1.5.1 Make Calls via VoIP Service Provider .....	36
1.5.2 Make Calls via IP-PBX .....	36
1.5.3 Make Peer-to-peer Calls .....	37
<b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>Introducing the Web Configurator</b> .....	<b>39</b>
2.1 Web Configurator Overview .....	39
2.2 Accessing the Web Configurator .....	39
2.3 Resetting the ZyXEL Device .....	41
2.4 Web Configurator Main Screen .....	42
2.4.1 Title Bar .....	42
2.4.2 Navigation Panel .....	43
2.4.3 Main Window .....	45
2.4.4 Status Bar .....	45

<b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Wizard Setup .....</b>	<b>47</b>
3.1 Main Wizard Screen .....	47
3.2 Connection Wizard .....	48
3.2.1 Welcome .....	49
3.2.2 System Information .....	50
3.2.3 ISP Parameters .....	51
3.2.3.1 Ethernet .....	51
3.2.3.2 PPPoE .....	52
3.2.4 Your IP Address .....	54
3.2.5 WAN IP Address Assignment .....	54
3.2.5.1 Ethernet .....	55
3.2.5.2 PPPoE .....	56
3.2.6 MAC Address .....	58
3.2.7 Finish .....	59
3.3 VoIP Setup Wizard .....	59
3.3.1 SIP Settings .....	60
3.3.2 Registration Complete .....	61
3.4 Bandwidth Management Wizard .....	63
3.4.1 Welcome .....	64
3.4.2 General Information .....	65
3.4.3 Services Setup .....	66
3.4.4 Priority Setup .....	67
3.4.5 Finish .....	68
<b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>Bridge Mode .....</b>	<b>69</b>
4.1 Bridge Mode Overview .....	69
4.2 Bridge Mode Procedure .....	70
<b>Chapter 5</b>	
<b>Status Screens .....</b>	<b>71</b>
5.1 Status Screen .....	71
5.2 Any IP Table Window .....	75
5.3 DHCP Table Window .....	75
5.4 VoIP Statistics Window .....	76
5.5 BW MGMT Monitor Window .....	78
5.6 Packet Statistics Window .....	80
<b>Chapter 6</b>	
<b>WAN .....</b>	<b>83</b>
6.1 WAN Overview .....	83
6.1.1 PPPoE Encapsulation .....	83



6.1.2 WAN IP Address Assignment .....	83
6.1.3 MAC Address .....	84
6.1.4 RIP Setup .....	84
6.1.5 DNS Server Address Assignment .....	84
6.2 WAN Screens .....	85
6.2.1 WAN Internet Connection Screen (Ethernet) .....	85
6.2.2 WAN Internet Connection Screen (Roadrunner) .....	86
6.2.3 WAN Internet Connection Screen (PPPoE) .....	87
6.2.4 WAN Advanced Screen .....	89
6.2.5 WAN Traffic Redirect Screen .....	91
<b>Chapter 7</b>	
<b>LAN .....</b>	<b>93</b>
7.1 LAN Overview .....	93
7.1.1 IP Address and Subnet Mask .....	93
7.1.2 DHCP Setup .....	94
7.1.3 LAN TCP/IP .....	94
7.1.4 DNS Server Address .....	94
7.1.5 RIP Setup .....	95
7.1.6 Multicast .....	95
7.1.7 Any IP .....	96
7.2 LAN Screens .....	98
7.2.1 LAN IP Screen .....	98
7.2.2 LAN DHCP Setup Screen .....	98
7.2.3 LAN Static DHCP Screen .....	99
7.2.4 LAN Client List Screen .....	100
7.2.5 LAN IP Alias Screen .....	101
7.2.6 LAN Advanced Screen .....	103
<b>Chapter 8</b>	
<b>NAT .....</b>	<b>107</b>
8.1 NAT Overview .....	107
8.1.1 Port Forwarding: Services and Port Numbers .....	107
8.1.2 Trigger Port Forwarding .....	108
8.1.2.1 Trigger Port Forwarding Example .....	108
8.1.2.2 Two Points To Remember About Trigger Ports .....	109
8.1.3 SIP ALG .....	109
8.2 NAT Screens .....	109
8.2.1 NAT General Screen .....	109
8.2.2 NAT Port Forwarding Screen .....	110
8.2.3 NAT Port Forwarding Edit Screen .....	112
8.2.4 NAT Trigger Port Screen .....	112
8.2.5 NAT ALG Screen .....	114

<b>Chapter 9</b>	
<b>SIP</b>	<b>115</b>
9.1 SIP Overview	115
9.1.1 Introduction to VoIP	115
9.1.2 Introduction to SIP	115
9.1.3 SIP Identities	115
9.1.3.1 SIP Number	116
9.1.3.2 SIP Service Domain	116
9.1.4 SIP Call Progression	116
9.1.5 SIP Client Server	116
9.1.5.1 SIP User Agent	117
9.1.5.2 SIP Proxy Server	117
9.1.5.3 SIP Redirect Server	118
9.1.5.4 SIP Register Server	118
9.1.6 RTP	118
9.1.7 NAT and SIP	119
9.1.7.1 SIP ALG	119
9.1.7.2 Use NAT	119
9.1.7.3 STUN	119
9.1.7.4 Outbound Proxy	120
9.1.8 Voice Coding	120
9.1.9 PSTN Call Setup Signaling	120
9.1.10 MWI (Message Waiting Indication)	121
9.1.11 Quality of Service (QoS)	121
9.1.11.1 Type of Service (ToS)	121
9.1.11.2 DiffServ	121
9.1.11.3 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior	121
9.1.11.4 VLAN	122
9.2 SIP Screens	122
9.2.1 SIP Settings Screen	122
9.2.2 Advanced SIP Setup Screen	124
9.2.3 SIP QoS Screen	128
<b>Chapter 10</b>	
<b>Phone</b>	<b>131</b>
10.1 Phone Overview	131
10.1.1 Voice Activity Detection/Silence Suppression/Comfort Noise	131
10.1.2 Echo Cancellation	131
10.1.3 Supplementary Phone Services Overview	131
10.1.3.1 The Flash Key	132
10.1.3.2 Europe Type Supplementary Phone Services	132
10.1.3.3 USA Type Supplementary Services	134
10.2 Phone Screens	135

10.2.1 Analog Phone Screen.....	135
10.2.2 Advanced Analog Phone Setup Screen .....	136
10.2.3 Common Phone Settings Screen .....	138
10.2.4 Phone Region Screen.....	138
<b>Chapter 11</b>	
<b>Phone Book .....</b>	<b>141</b>
11.1 Phone Book Overview .....	141
11.2 Phone Book Screens .....	141
11.2.1 Incoming Call Policy Screen .....	141
11.2.2 Speed Dial Screen .....	143
<b>Chapter 12</b>	
<b>PSTN Line .....</b>	<b>147</b>
12.1 PSTN Line Overview .....	147
12.2 PSTN Line Screen .....	147
<b>Chapter 13</b>	
<b>Firewall.....</b>	<b>149</b>
13.1 Firewall Overview .....	149
13.1.1 Stateful Inspection Firewall. ....	149
13.1.2 About the ZyXEL Device Firewall .....	149
13.1.3 Guidelines For Enhancing Security With Your Firewall .....	150
13.1.4 The Firewall, NAT and Remote Management .....	150
13.1.4.1 LAN-to-WAN rules .....	150
13.1.4.2 WAN-to-LAN rules .....	151
13.2 Triangle Route .....	151
13.2.1 The "Triangle Route" Problem .....	152
13.2.2 Solving the "Triangle Route" Problem .....	152
13.3 Firewall Screens .....	153
13.3.1 General Firewall Screen .....	153
13.3.2 Firewall Services Screen .....	154
<b>Chapter 14</b>	
<b>Content Filter.....</b>	<b>157</b>
14.1 Content Filtering Overview .....	157
14.2 Content Filtering Screens .....	157
14.2.1 Content Filter Screen.....	157
14.2.2 Content Filter Schedule Screen.....	159
<b>Chapter 15</b>	
<b>Bandwidth MGMT .....</b>	<b>161</b>
15.1 Bandwidth Management Overview .....	161

15.1.1 Bandwidth Classes and Filters .....	161
15.1.2 Proportional Bandwidth Allocation .....	162
15.1.3 Application-based Bandwidth Management .....	162
15.1.4 Subnet-based Bandwidth Management .....	162
15.1.5 Application- and Subnet-based Bandwidth Management .....	162
15.1.6 Scheduler .....	163
15.1.7 Maximize Bandwidth Usage .....	163
15.1.7.1 Reserving Bandwidth for Non-Bandwidth Class Traffic .....	163
15.1.7.2 Maximize Bandwidth Usage Example .....	164
15.1.7.3 Priority-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth .....	164
15.1.7.4 Fairness-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth ...	165
15.1.8 Bandwidth Borrowing .....	165
15.1.8.1 Bandwidth Borrowing Example .....	166
15.1.8.2 Maximize Bandwidth Usage With Bandwidth Borrowing .....	166
15.1.9 Over Allotment of Bandwidth .....	166
15.2 Bandwidth Management Screens .....	167
15.2.1 Bandwidth Management Summary Screen .....	167
15.2.2 Bandwidth Class Setup Screen .....	169
15.2.3 Bandwidth Class Edit Screen .....	170
15.2.4 Bandwidth Monitor Screen.....	172
<b>Chapter 16</b>	
<b>Remote MGMT .....</b>	<b>175</b>
16.1 Remote Management Overview .....	175
16.1.1 Remote Management Limitations .....	175
16.1.2 Remote Management and NAT .....	176
16.1.3 System Timeout .....	176
16.2 Remote Management Screens .....	176
16.2.1 WWW Screen .....	176
16.2.2 Telnet Screen.....	177
16.2.3 FTP Screen.....	177
16.2.4 DNS Screen.....	178
16.2.5 Security Screen .....	179
<b>Chapter 17</b>	
<b>Static Route .....</b>	<b>181</b>
17.1 Static Route Overview .....	181
17.2 Static Route Screens .....	181
17.2.1 IP Static Route Screen.....	181
17.2.2 IP Static Route Edit Screen .....	182

<b>Chapter 18</b>	
<b>UPnP</b>	<b>185</b>
18.1 Introducing Universal Plug and Play	185
18.1.1 How do I know if I'm using UPnP?	185
18.1.2 NAT Traversal	185
18.1.3 Cautions with UPnP	185
18.1.4 UPnP and ZyXEL	186
18.2 UPnP Examples	186
18.2.1 Installing UPnP in Windows Example	186
18.2.1.1 Installing UPnP in Windows Me	186
18.2.1.2 Installing UPnP in Windows XP	188
18.2.2 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example	190
18.2.2.1 Auto-discover Your UPnP-enabled Network Device	190
18.2.2.2 Web Configurator Easy Access	194
18.3 UPnP Screen	197
<b>Chapter 19</b>	
<b>System</b>	<b>199</b>
19.1 System Features Overview	199
19.1.1 System Name	199
19.1.2 Domain Name	199
19.1.3 DNS Server Address Assignment	199
19.1.4 Dynamic DNS	200
19.1.5 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List	200
19.1.6 Resetting the Time	201
19.2 System Screens	201
19.2.1 General System Screen	201
19.2.2 Dynamic DNS Screen	203
19.2.3 Time Setting Screen	205
<b>Chapter 20</b>	
<b>Logs</b>	<b>209</b>
20.1 Logs Overview	209
20.1.1 Alerts	209
20.1.2 Syslog Logs	210
20.2 Logs Screens	211
20.2.1 Log Viewer Screen	211
20.2.2 Log Settings Screen	212
20.3 Log Message Descriptions	215
<b>Chapter 21</b>	
<b>Tools</b>	<b>225</b>
21.1 Tools Overview	225

21.1.1 ZyXEL Firmware .....	225
21.2 Tools Screens .....	225
21.2.1 Firmware Screen .....	225
21.2.2 Firmware Upload Screens .....	226
21.2.3 Configuration Screen .....	227
21.2.4 Restore Configuration Screens .....	228
21.2.5 Restart Screen .....	230
<b>Appendix A</b>	
<b>Product Specifications .....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>Appendix B</b>	
<b>Setting up Your Computer's IP Address .....</b>	<b>235</b>
<b>Appendix C</b>	
<b>IP Subnetting .....</b>	<b>249</b>
<b>Appendix D</b>	
<b>SIP Passthrough .....</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>Appendix E</b>	
<b>NAT .....</b>	<b>259</b>
<b>Appendix F</b>	
<b>Internal SPTGEN .....</b>	<b>269</b>
<b>Appendix G</b>	
<b>Services .....</b>	<b>285</b>
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>289</b>

# List of Figures

Figure 1 LEDs .....	35
Figure 2 VoIP Service Provider Application .....	36
Figure 3 IP-PBX Application .....	37
Figure 4 Peer-to-peer Calling .....	37
Figure 5 Login Screen .....	40
Figure 6 Change Password Screen .....	40
Figure 7 Select Mode Screen .....	41
Figure 8 Main Screen .....	42
Figure 9 Main Wizard Screen .....	48
Figure 10 Connection Wizard > Welcome .....	49
Figure 11 Connection Wizard > System Information .....	50
Figure 12 Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (Ethernet) .....	52
Figure 13 Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (PPPoE) .....	53
Figure 14 Connection Wizard > IP Address .....	54
Figure 15 Connection Wizard > IP Address (Ethernet) .....	55
Figure 16 Connection Wizard > IP Address (PPPoE) .....	57
Figure 17 Connection Wizard > MAC Address .....	58
Figure 18 Connection Wizard > Finish .....	59
Figure 19 VoIP Setup Wizard > SIP Settings .....	60
Figure 20 VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Test .....	61
Figure 21 VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Success) .....	62
Figure 22 VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Fail) .....	63
Figure 23 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Welcome .....	64
Figure 24 Bandwidth Management Wizard > General Information .....	65
Figure 25 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Services Setup .....	66
Figure 26 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Priority Setup .....	67
Figure 27 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Finish .....	68
Figure 28 Prompt Before Change to Router Mode .....	70
Figure 29 Status Screen .....	72
Figure 30 Any IP Table Window .....	75
Figure 31 DHCP Table Window .....	76
Figure 32 VoIP Statistics Window .....	77
Figure 33 BW MGMT Monitor Window .....	79
Figure 34 Packet Statistics Window .....	81
Figure 35 Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Ethernet) .....	85
Figure 36 Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Roadrunner) .....	87
Figure 37 Network > WAN > Internet Connection (PPPoE) .....	88
Figure 38 Network > WAN > Advanced .....	90

Figure 39 Network > WAN > Traffic Redirect .....	92
Figure 40 Any IP Example .....	97
Figure 41 Network > LAN > IP .....	98
Figure 42 Network > LAN > DHCP Setup .....	99
Figure 43 Network > LAN > Static DHCP .....	100
Figure 44 Network > LAN > Client List .....	101
Figure 45 Network > LAN > IP Alias .....	102
Figure 46 Network > LAN > Advanced .....	104
Figure 47 Multiple Servers Behind NAT Example .....	108
Figure 48 Trigger Port Forwarding Process: Example .....	108
Figure 49 Network > NAT > General .....	110
Figure 50 Network > NAT > Port Forwarding .....	111
Figure 51 Network > NAT > Port Forwarding > Edit .....	112
Figure 52 Network > NAT > Trigger Port .....	113
Figure 53 Network > NAT > ALG .....	114
Figure 54 SIP User Agent .....	117
Figure 55 SIP Proxy Server .....	117
Figure 56 SIP Redirect Server .....	118
Figure 57 STUN .....	120
Figure 58 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field .....	121
Figure 59 VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings .....	123
Figure 60 VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings > Advanced .....	125
Figure 61 VoIP > SIP > QoS .....	129
Figure 62 VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone .....	135
Figure 63 VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone > Advanced .....	137
Figure 64 VoIP > Phone > Common .....	138
Figure 65 VoIP > Phone > Region .....	139
Figure 66 VoIP > Phone Book > Incoming Call Policy .....	142
Figure 67 VoIP > Phone Book > Speed Dial .....	144
Figure 68 VoIP > PSTN Line > General .....	148
Figure 69 Firewall Rule Directions .....	150
Figure 70 Ideal Firewall Setup .....	151
Figure 71 "Triangle Route" Problem .....	152
Figure 72 IP Alias .....	153
Figure 73 Security > Firewall > General .....	154
Figure 74 Security > Firewall > Services .....	155
Figure 75 Security > Content Filter > Filter .....	158
Figure 76 Security > Content Filter > Schedule .....	159
Figure 77 Subnet-based Bandwidth Management Example .....	162
Figure 78 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Summary .....	168
Figure 79 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup .....	170
Figure 80 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup > Edit .....	171
Figure 81 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Monitor .....	173



Figure 82 Management > Remote MGMT > WWW .....	176
Figure 83 Management > Remote MGMT > Telnet .....	177
Figure 84 Management > Remote MGMT > FTP .....	178
Figure 85 Management > Remote MGMT > DNS .....	179
Figure 86 Management > Remote MGMT > Security .....	180
Figure 87 Example of Static Routing Topology .....	181
Figure 88 Management > Static Route > IP Static Route .....	182
Figure 89 Management > Static Route > IP Static Route > Edit .....	183
Figure 90 Add/Remove Programs: Windows Setup: Communication .....	187
Figure 91 Add/Remove Programs: Windows Setup: Communication: Components .....	187
Figure 92 Network Connections .....	188
Figure 93 Windows Optional Networking Components Wizard .....	189
Figure 94 Networking Services .....	190
Figure 95 Network Connections .....	191
Figure 96 Internet Connection Properties .....	192
Figure 97 Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings .....	193
Figure 98 Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings: Add .....	193
Figure 99 System Tray Icon .....	194
Figure 100 Internet Connection Status .....	194
Figure 101 Network Connections .....	195
Figure 102 Network Connections: My Network Places .....	196
Figure 103 Network Connections: My Network Places: Properties: Example .....	197
Figure 104 Management > UPnP .....	198
Figure 105 Maintenance > System > General .....	202
Figure 106 Maintenance > System > Dynamic DNS .....	204
Figure 107 Maintenance > System > Time Setting .....	206
Figure 108 Maintenance > Logs > View Log .....	211
Figure 109 Maintenance > Logs > Log Settings .....	213
Figure 110 Maintenance > Tools > Firmware .....	226
Figure 111 Firmware Upload In Process .....	227
Figure 112 Network Temporarily Disconnected .....	227
Figure 113 Firmware Upload Error .....	227
Figure 114 Maintenance > Tools > Configuration .....	228
Figure 115 Configuration Upload Successful .....	229
Figure 116 Network Temporarily Disconnected .....	229
Figure 117 Configuration Upload Error .....	229
Figure 118 Maintenance > Tools > Restart .....	230
Figure 119 Maintenance > Tools > Restart > In Progress .....	230
Figure 120 WIndows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration .....	236
Figure 121 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address .....	237
Figure 122 Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration .....	238
Figure 123 Windows XP: Start Menu .....	239
Figure 124 Windows XP: Control Panel .....	239

Figure 125 Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties .....	240
Figure 126 Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties .....	240
Figure 127 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties .....	241
Figure 128 Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Properties .....	242
Figure 129 Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties .....	243
Figure 130 Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu .....	244
Figure 131 Macintosh OS X: Network .....	244
Figure 132 Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Network Configuration: Devices .....	245
Figure 133 Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Ethernet Device: General .....	246
Figure 134 Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Network Configuration: DNS .....	246
Figure 135 Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Network Configuration: Activate .....	247
Figure 136 Red Hat 9.0: Dynamic IP Address Setting in ifconfig-eth0 .....	247
Figure 137 Red Hat 9.0: Static IP Address Setting in ifconfig-eth0 .....	248
Figure 138 Red Hat 9.0: DNS Settings in resolv.conf .....	248
Figure 139 Red Hat 9.0: Restart Ethernet Card .....	248
Figure 140 Red Hat 9.0: Checking TCP/IP Properties .....	248
Figure 141 How NAT Works .....	261
Figure 142 NAT Application With IP Alias .....	262
Figure 143 Full Cone NAT Example .....	265
Figure 144 Restricted Cone NAT Example .....	266
Figure 145 Port Restricted Cone NAT Example .....	267
Figure 146 Symmetric NAT .....	268
Figure 147 Configuration Text File Format: Column Descriptions .....	269
Figure 148 Invalid Parameter Entered: Command Line Example .....	270
Figure 149 Valid Parameter Entered: Command Line Example .....	270
Figure 150 Internal SPTGEN FTP Download Example .....	271
Figure 151 Internal SPTGEN FTP Upload Example .....	271

# List of Tables

Table 1 LED Descriptions .....	35
Table 2 Web Configurator Icons in the Title Bar .....	43
Table 3 Navigation Panel Summary .....	43
Table 4 Main Wizard Screen .....	48
Table 5 Connection Wizard > Welcome .....	49
Table 6 Connection Wizard > System Information .....	50
Table 7 Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (Ethernet) .....	52
Table 8 Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (PPPoE) .....	53
Table 9 Connection Wizard > IP Address .....	54
Table 10 Connection Wizard > IP Address (Ethernet) .....	55
Table 11 Connection Wizard > IP Address (PPPoE) .....	57
Table 12 Connection Wizard > MAC Address .....	58
Table 13 Connection Wizard > Finish .....	59
Table 14 VoIP Setup Wizard > SIP Settings .....	60
Table 15 VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Success) .....	62
Table 16 VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Fail) .....	63
Table 17 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Welcome .....	64
Table 18 Bandwidth Management Wizard > General Information .....	65
Table 19 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Services Setup .....	66
Table 20 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Priority Setup .....	67
Table 21 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Finish .....	68
Table 22 Bridge Mode: Features by Screen .....	69
Table 23 Status Screen .....	72
Table 24 Any IP Table Window .....	75
Table 25 DHCP Table Window .....	76
Table 26 VoIP Statistics Window .....	77
Table 27 BW MGMT Monitor Window .....	79
Table 28 Packet Statistics Window .....	81
Table 29 Private IP Address Ranges .....	83
Table 30 Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Ethernet) .....	86
Table 31 Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Roadrunner) .....	87
Table 32 Network > WAN > Internet Connection (PPPoE) .....	88
Table 33 Network > WAN > Advanced .....	90
Table 34 Network > WAN > Traffic Redirect .....	92
Table 35 Network > LAN > IP .....	98
Table 36 Network > LAN > DHCP Setup .....	99
Table 37 Network > LAN > Static DHCP .....	100
Table 38 Network > LAN > Client List .....	101

Table 39 Network > LAN > IP Alias .....	102
Table 40 Network > LAN > Advanced .....	104
Table 41 Network > NAT > General .....	110
Table 42 Network > NAT > Port Forwarding .....	111
Table 43 Network > NAT > Port Forwarding > Edit .....	112
Table 44 Network > NAT > Trigger Port .....	113
Table 45 Network > NAT > ALG .....	114
Table 46 SIP Call Progression .....	116
Table 47 VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings .....	123
Table 48 VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings > Advanced .....	126
Table 49 VoIP > SIP > QoS .....	129
Table 50 European Type Flash Key Commands .....	132
Table 51 USA Type Flash Key Commands .....	134
Table 52 VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone .....	135
Table 53 VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone > Advanced .....	137
Table 54 VoIP > Phone > Common .....	138
Table 55 VoIP > Phone > Region .....	139
Table 56 VoIP > Phone Book > Incoming Call Policy .....	142
Table 57 VoIP > Phone Book > Speed Dial .....	144
Table 58 VoIP > PSTN Line > General .....	148
Table 59 Security > Firewall > General .....	154
Table 60 Security > Firewall > Services .....	155
Table 61 Security > Content Filter > Filter .....	158
Table 62 Security > Content Filter > Schedule .....	159
Table 63 Application and Subnet-based Bandwidth Management Example .....	162
Table 64 Maximize Bandwidth Usage Example .....	164
Table 65 Priority-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth Example .....	164
Table 66 Fairness-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth Example .....	165
Table 67 Bandwidth Borrowing Example .....	166
Table 68 Over Allotment of Bandwidth Example .....	166
Table 69 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Summary .....	168
Table 70 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup .....	170
Table 71 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup > Edit .....	171
Table 72 Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Monitor .....	173
Table 73 Management > Remote MGMT > WWW .....	176
Table 74 Management > Remote MGMT > Telnet .....	177
Table 75 Management > Remote MGMT > FTP .....	178
Table 76 Management > Remote MGMT > DNS .....	179
Table 77 Management > Remote MGMT > Security .....	180
Table 78 Management > Static Route > IP Static Route .....	182
Table 79 Management > Static Route > IP Static Route > Edit .....	183
Table 80 Management > UPnP .....	198
Table 81 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers .....	200

Table 82 Maintenance > System > General .....	202
Table 83 Maintenance > System > Dynamic DNS .....	204
Table 84 Maintenance > System > Time Setting .....	206
Table 85 Syslog Logs .....	210
Table 86 RFC-2408 ISAKMP Payload Types .....	210
Table 87 Maintenance > Logs > View Log .....	211
Table 88 Maintenance > Logs > Log Settings .....	213
Table 89 System Error Logs .....	215
Table 90 System Maintenance Logs .....	215
Table 91 Access Control Logs .....	216
Table 92 TCP Reset Logs .....	216
Table 93 Packet Filter Logs .....	217
Table 94 ICMP Logs .....	217
Table 95 CDR Logs .....	218
Table 96 PPP Logs .....	218
Table 97 UPnP Logs .....	218
Table 98 Content Filtering Logs .....	219
Table 99 Attack Logs .....	219
Table 100 Remote Management Logs .....	220
Table 101 ICMP Notes .....	221
Table 102 SIP Logs .....	222
Table 103 RTP Logs .....	222
Table 104 FSM Logs: Caller Side .....	223
Table 105 FSM Logs: Callee Side .....	223
Table 106 PSTN Line Logs .....	223
Table 107 Maintenance > Tools > Firmware .....	226
Table 108 Maintenance > Tools > Configuration .....	228
Table 109 Device Specifications .....	231
Table 110 Feature Specifications .....	232
Table 111 ZyXEL Device Power Adaptor Specifications .....	233
Table 112 Classes of IP Addresses .....	249
Table 113 Allowed IP Address Range By Class .....	250
Table 114 "Natural" Masks .....	250
Table 115 Alternative Subnet Mask Notation .....	251
Table 116 Two Subnets Example .....	251
Table 117 Subnet 1 .....	252
Table 118 Subnet 2 .....	252
Table 119 Subnet 1 .....	253
Table 120 Subnet 2 .....	253
Table 121 Subnet 3 .....	253
Table 122 Subnet 4 .....	254
Table 123 Eight Subnets .....	254
Table 124 Class C Subnet Planning .....	254

Table 125 Class B Subnet Planning .....	255
Table 126 NAT Definitions .....	259
Table 127 NAT Mapping Types .....	263
Table 128 NAT Types .....	264
Table 129 Abbreviations Used in the Example Internal SPTGEN Screens Table .....	272
Table 130 Menu 1 General Setup .....	272
Table 131 Menu 3.1 General Ethernet Setup .....	272
Table 132 Menu 4 Internet Access Setup .....	276
Table 133 Menu 12.1.1 IP Static Route Setup .....	277
Table 134 Menu 15 SUA Server Setup .....	278
Table 135 Menu 21.1 Filter Set #1 .....	279
Table 136 Menu 21.1 Filter Set #2 .....	281
Table 137 Menu 23 System Menus .....	282
Table 138 Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control .....	283
Table 139 Command Examples .....	284
Table 140 Examples of Services .....	285

# Preface

Congratulations on your purchase of the P-2302R-P1 Series VoIP station gateway (“ZyXEL Device”). Your ZyXEL Device is easy to install and configure.

## About This User's Guide

This User's Guide is designed to guide you through the configuration of your ZyXEL Device using the web configurator.

## Related Documentation

- Supporting Disk  
Refer to the included CD for support documents.
- Quick Start Guide  
The Quick Start Guide is designed to help you get up and running right away. It contains a detailed easy-to-follow connection diagram, and information on setting up your network and configuring for Internet access.
- Web Configurator Online Help  
Embedded web help for descriptions of individual screens and supplementary information.
- ZyXEL Glossary and Web Site  
Please refer to [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) for an online glossary of networking terms and additional support documentation.








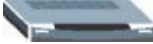

## User Guide Feedback

Help us help you. E-mail all User Guide-related comments, questions or suggestions for improvement to [techwriters@zyxel.com.tw](mailto:techwriters@zyxel.com.tw) or send regular mail to The Technical Writing Team, ZyXEL Communications Corp., 6 Innovation Road II, Science-Based Industrial Park, Hsinchu, 300, Taiwan. Thank you.

## Syntax Conventions

- “Enter” means for you to type one or more characters. “Select” or “Choose” means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- Mouse action sequences are denoted by right angle brackets (>). For example, “**Start** > **Settings** > **Control Panel** > **System**” means click the **Start** button, move the mouse over **Settings**, move the mouse over or click on **Control Panel**, and then click on **System**.
- “e.g.,” is a shorthand for “for instance”, and “i.e.,” means “that is” or “in other words”.
- The Prestige P-2302R-P1 may be referred to as the ZyXEL Device, the router or the device in this user's guide.

## Graphics Icons Key

ZyXEL Device 	Computer 	Notebook Computer 
Server 	Switch 	Router 
Telephone 	Modem 	Trunking Gateway 



# CHAPTER 1

## Introducing the ZyXEL Device

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the ZyXEL Device.

### 1.1 P-2302R-P1 VoIP ATA / Station Gateway Series Overview

The Prestige P-2302R-P1 VoIP (Voice over IP) station gateway lets you use traditional analog telephones to make telephone calls over the Internet. The ZyXEL Device uses SIP (Session Initiation Protocol), an internationally recognized standard for implementing VoIP.

You can call any landline or mobile telephone as well as IP telephones. You don't need to know if the recipient's connection type is an IP, cellular or landline based service. Calls received from IP telephones work exactly as you would expect from the traditional telephone service.

The NAT and DHCP server features allow you to use an Ethernet hub or switch to set up a private network and allow multiple computers to share a single Internet connection. The ZyXEL Device also provides content filtering and a firewall for security.

The ZyXEL Device's web configurator allows easy management and configuration.

### 1.2 P-2302RL-P1 VoIP ATA / Station Gateway with PSTN Line

The P-2302RL-P1 has all of the features of the P-2302R-P1 and adds the PSTN (Public Switched Telephone Network) line. A PSTN line lets you have VoIP phone service and PSTN phone service at the same time.

**Note:** If the P-2302RL-P1 is turned off, you can only use the phone that is connected to the **PHONE1** port to make phone calls, regardless of the settings in any screen. Make sure you know which phone this is, especially in case you want to make an emergency call.

### 1.3 Features

Your ZyXEL Device is packed with a number of features that make it flexible and easy to use.

- 
1. Some features documented in this user's guide were not available in the ZyXEL Device P-2302RL-P1 at the time of writing.

## **Firewall**

The ZyXEL Device is a stateful inspection firewall with DoS (Denial of Service) protection. By default, when the firewall is activated, all incoming traffic from the WAN to the LAN is blocked unless it is initiated from the LAN. The ZyXEL Device firewall supports TCP/UDP inspection, DoS detection and prevention, real time alerts, reports and logs.

## **Content Filtering**

The ZyXEL Device can also block access to web sites containing keywords that you specify. You can define time periods and days during which content filtering is enabled and include or exclude a range of users on the LAN from content filtering.

## **Bandwidth Management**

Bandwidth management allows you to allocate network resources according to defined policies. This policy-based bandwidth allocation helps your network to better handle real-time applications such as Voice-over-IP (VoIP).

## **SIP ALG**

The ZyXEL Device is a SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG). It allows VoIP calls to pass through NAT for devices behind the ZyXEL Device (such as a SIP-based VoIP software application on a computer).

## **Any IP**

The Any IP feature allows a computer to access the Internet and the ZyXEL Device without changing the network settings (such as IP address and subnet mask) of the computer, when the IP addresses of the computer and the ZyXEL Device are not in the same subnet.

## **Bridge Mode**

The ZyXEL Device can act as a bridge, instead of a router. This change should not require any other changes in your existing network.

## **10/100Mbps Auto-negotiating Fast Ethernet Interfaces**

The auto-negotiation feature allows the ZyXEL Device to detect the speed of incoming transmissions and adjust appropriately without manual intervention. It allows data transfer of either 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps in either half-duplex or full-duplex mode depending on your Ethernet network.

## **Auto-crossover 10/100 Mbps Ethernet Interfaces**

The Ethernet interfaces automatically adjust to either a crossover or straight-through Ethernet cable.

## Reset Button

The ZyXEL Device reset button is built into the rear panel. Use this button to restore the factory default password to 1234; IP address to 192.168.1.1, subnet mask to 255.255.255.0 and DHCP server enabled with a pool of 32 IP addresses starting at 192.168.1.33.

## Multiple Telephones

You can connect more than one telephone to a ZyXEL Device telephone port. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to the telephone line. See the [Table 109 on page 231](#) for the ZyXEL Device's REN.

## PSTN Line (P-2302RL-P1 only)

The ZyXEL Device allows you to connect a PSTN line. You can receive incoming PSTN phone calls even while someone else connected to the ZyXEL Device is making VoIP phone calls. You can dial a (prefix) number to make an outgoing PSTN call. You can still make PSTN phone calls if the ZyXEL Device loses power.

## Dynamic Jitter Buffer

The ZyXEL Device has a built-in, adaptive buffer that helps to smooth out the variations in delay (jitter) for voice traffic. This helps ensure good voice quality for your conversations.

## Multiple SIP Accounts

The ZyXEL Device allows you to simultaneously use multiple voice (SIP) accounts and assign them to one or more telephone ports.

## STUN

Simple Traversal of User Datagram Protocol (UDP) through Network Address Translators (STUN) allows SIP to pass through NAT routers.

## Outbound Proxy

Some VoIP service providers use a SIP outbound server to handle voice calls. This allows the ZyXEL Device to work from behind any type of NAT router and eliminates the need for STUN or a SIP ALG (Application Layer Gateway).

## Multiple Voice Channels

The ZyXEL Device can simultaneously handle multiple voice channels (telephone calls). Additionally you can answer an incoming phone call on a VoIP account, even while someone else is using the account for a phone call.

## Voice Coding

The ZyXEL Device can use the following voice codecs (coder/decoders).

- G.711
- G.729

## Voice Activity Detection/Silence Suppression

Voice Activity Detection (VAD) reduces the bandwidth that a call uses by not transmitting when you are not speaking.

## Comfort Noise Generation

The ZyXEL Device generates background noise to fill moments of silence when the other device in a call stops transmitting because the other party is not speaking (as total silence could easily be mistaken for a lost connection).

## Echo Cancellation

The ZyXEL Device supports G.168, an ITU-T standard for eliminating the echo caused by the sound of your voice reverberating in the telephone receiver while you talk.

## QoS (Quality of Service)

Quality of Service (QoS) mechanisms help to provide better service on a per-flow basis. The ZyXEL Device supports Type of Service (ToS) and Differentiated Services (DiffServ). This allows the ZyXEL Device to tag voice frames so they can be prioritized over the network.

## Fax Tone Detection and Pass-through

The ZyXEL Device automatically detects fax messages and sends them over PCM G.711 or T.38.

## Auto-provisioning

Your VoIP service provider (the company that lets you make phone calls over the Internet) can automatically update your ZyXEL Device's configuration via an auto-provisioning server.

## Firmware Upgrades

Use the web configurator to upload updated firmware to your ZyXEL Device.

## Auto Firmware Upgrade

The ZyXEL Device gives you the option to upgrade to a newer firmware version if it finds one during auto-provisioning. Your VoIP service provider must have an auto-provisioning server and a server set up with firmware in order for this feature to work.

## Network Address Translation (NAT)

Network Address Translation (NAT) allows the translation of an Internet protocol address used within one network (for example a private IP address used in a local network) to a different IP address known within another network (for example a public IP address used on the Internet).

## Universal Plug and Play (UPnP)

Using the standard TCP/IP protocol, the ZyXEL Device and other UPnP enabled devices can dynamically join a network, obtain an IP address and convey its capabilities to other devices on the network.

## DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) allows the individual client computers to obtain the TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a centralized DHCP server. The ZyXEL Device has built-in DHCP server capability, enabled by default, which means it can assign IP addresses, an IP default gateway and DNS servers to all systems that support the DHCP client. The ZyXEL Device can also act as a surrogate DHCP server where it relays IP address assignment from the actual real DHCP server to the clients.

## Port Forwarding

Use this feature to forward incoming service requests to a server on your local network. You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server.

## Dynamic DNS Support

With Dynamic DNS (Domain Name System) support, you can have a static hostname alias for a dynamic IP address, allowing the host to be more easily accessible from various locations on the Internet. You must register for this service with a Dynamic DNS service provider.

## IP Multicast

Deliver IP packets to a specific group of hosts using IP multicast. IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is the protocol used to support multicast groups. The latest version is version 2 (see RFC 2236); the ZyXEL Device supports both versions 1 and 2.

## IP Alias

IP Alias allows you to partition a physical network into logical networks over the same Ethernet interface. The ZyXEL Device supports three logical LAN interfaces via its single physical Ethernet LAN interface with the ZyXEL Device itself as the gateway for each network.

## **PPPoE**

PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet) facilitates the interaction of a host with an Internet modem to achieve access to high-speed data networks via a familiar "dial-up networking" user interface.

## **RoadRunner Support**

In addition to standard cable modem services, the ZyXEL Device supports Time Warner's RoadRunner Service.

## **Embedded FTP and TFTP Servers**

The ZyXEL Device's embedded FTP and TFTP servers enable fast firmware upgrades as well as configuration file backups and restoration.

## **Logging and Tracing**

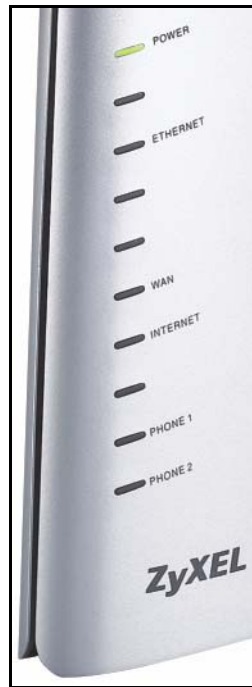
- Built-in message logging and packet tracing.
- Syslog facility support.

## **Ease of Installation**

Your ZyXEL Device is designed for quick, intuitive and easy installation. Physically, its compact size and lightness make it easy to position anywhere in your home or office.

## **1.4 LEDs**

The following graphic displays the labels of the LEDs.

**Figure 1** LEDs

None of the LEDs are on if the ZyXEL Device is not receiving power.

**Table 1** LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
POWER	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device is receiving power and ready for use.
		Blinking	The ZyXEL Device is self-testing.
	Red	On	The ZyXEL Device detected an error while self-testing, or there is a device malfunction.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device is not receiving power.
INTERNET	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device has a working IP address.
	Red	On	The ZyXEL Device does not have a working IP address, but there is a network connection.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device does not detect any network connection.
WAN	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device has an Ethernet connection with the cable/DSL modem.
		Blinking	The ZyXEL Device is sending/receiving data to /from the cable/DSL modem.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device doesn't have an Ethernet connection with the cable/DSL modem.
LAN	Green	On	The ZyXEL Device has an Ethernet connection with a computer.
		Blinking	The ZyXEL Device is sending/receiving data to /from the computer.
		Off	The ZyXEL Device does not have an Ethernet connection with a computer.

**Table 1** LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
Phone 1-2	Green	On	A SIP account on this phone port is registered.
		Blinking	The phone is off the hook.
	Orange	On	There is a voice message for a SIP account on this phone port. (The SIP account has to be registered first.)
		Blinking	The phone is off the hook, and there is a voice message for a SIP account on this phone port.
		Off	There are no SIP accounts registered on this phone port.

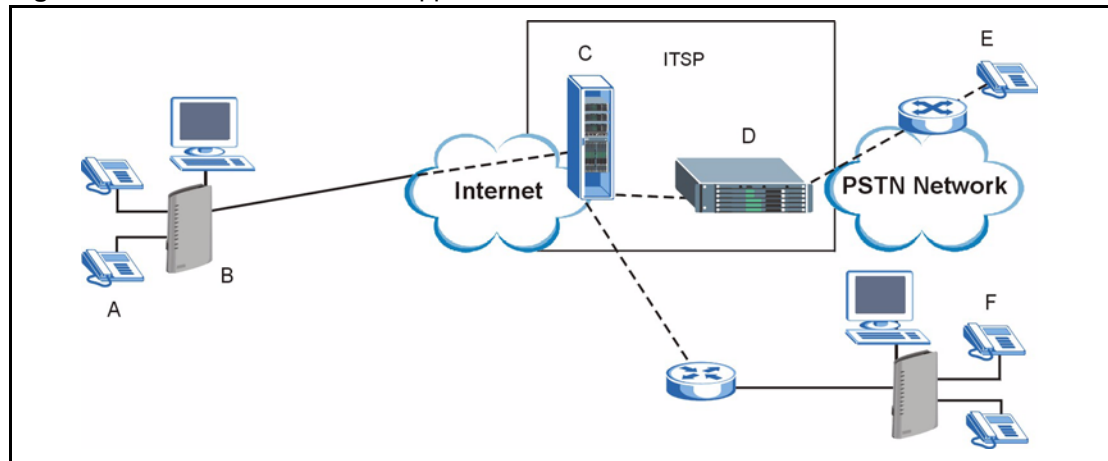
## 1.5 Applications

Here are some examples of how you can use your ZyXEL Device.

### 1.5.1 Make Calls via VoIP Service Provider

In a home or small office environment, you can use the ZyXEL Device to make and receive VoIP telephone calls through a VoIP service provider.

The following figure shows a basic example of how you would make a VoIP call through a VoIP service provider. You use your analog phone (A in the figure) and the ZyXEL Device (B) changes the call into VoIP. The ZyXEL Device then sends your call to the Internet and the VoIP service provider's SIP server (C). For PSTN phones (E), the VoIP call server forwards calls through a trunking gateway (D). For IP phones (F), the VoIP call server forwards calls through the Internet.

**Figure 2** VoIP Service Provider Application

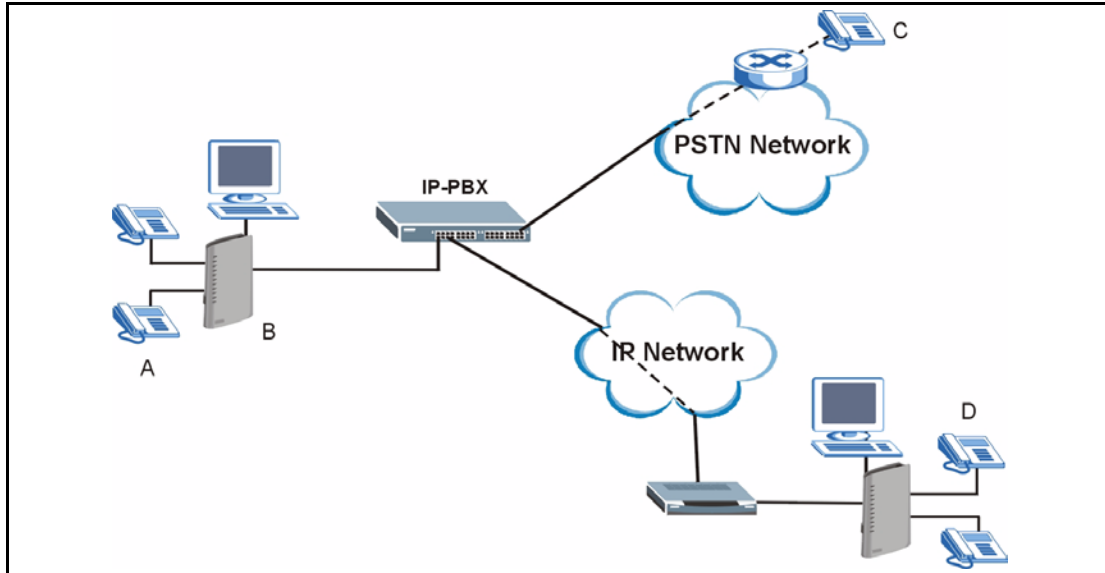
### 1.5.2 Make Calls via IP-PBX

If your company has an IP-PBX (Internet Protocol Private Branch Exchange), you can use the ZyXEL Device to make and receive VoIP telephone calls through it.



In this example, you use your analog phone (A in the figure) and the ZyXEL Device (B) changes the call into VoIP and sends it to the IP-PBX. For PSTN phones (C), the IP-PBX forwards calls through the PSTN network. For IP phones (D), the IP-PBX forwards calls through an IP network (this could include the Internet).

**Figure 3** IP-PBX Application

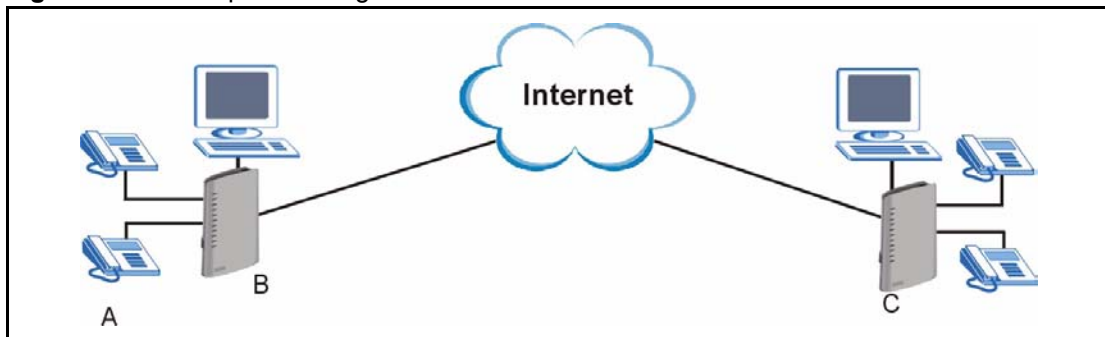


### 1.5.3 Make Peer-to-peer Calls

Use the ZyXEL Device to make a call to the recipient's IP address without using a SIP proxy server. Peer-to-peer calls are also called "Point to Point" or "IP-to-IP" calls. You must know the peer's IP address in order to do this.

The following figure shows a basic example of how you would make a peer-to-peer VoIP call. You use your analog phone (A in the figure) and the ZyXEL Device (B) changes the call into VoIP. The ZyXEL Device then sends your call through the Internet to the peer VoIP device (C).

**Figure 4** Peer-to-peer Calling





# CHAPTER 2

## Introducing the Web Configurator

This chapter describes how to access the ZyXEL Device web configurator and provides an overview of its screens.

### 2.1 Web Configurator Overview

The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy ZyXEL Device setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later or Netscape Navigator 7.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

See the troubleshooting chapter if you want to make sure these functions are allowed in Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

### 2.2 Accessing the Web Configurator

- 1** Make sure your ZyXEL Device hardware is properly connected and prepare your computer/computer network to connect to the ZyXEL Device (refer to the Quick Start Guide).
- 2** Launch your web browser.
- 3** Type "192.168.1.1" (the ZyXEL Device's default LAN IP address) as the URL. The **Login** screen appears.

**Figure 5** Login Screen

The screenshot shows the login interface for a ZyXEL P-2302RL-P1 router. At the top is the ZyXEL logo. Below it, the model number 'P-2302RL-P1' is displayed. The text reads: 'Welcome to your router Configuration Interface' and 'Enter your password and click "Login"'. There is a password input field with a key icon and the label 'Password :'. Below the field, it says '( max. 30 alphanumeric, printable characters and no spaces )'. A note with a yellow icon states: 'Note: Please turn on the Javascript and ActiveX control setting on Internet Explorer when operating system is Windows XP and service pack is SP2.' At the bottom are two buttons: 'Login' and 'Reset'.

- 4 Type "1234" (default) as the password, and click **Login**. In some versions, the default password appears automatically - if this is the case, click **Login**. The **Change Password** screen appears.

**Figure 6** Change Password Screen

The screenshot shows the 'Change Password' screen. At the top is the ZyXEL logo. The main heading is 'Please enter a new password'. Below this, a paragraph explains: 'Your router is currently using the default password. To protect your network from unauthorized users we suggest you change your password at this time. Please select a new password that will be easy to remember yet difficult for others to guess. We suggest you combine text with numbers to make it more difficult for an intruder to guess.' Another paragraph states: 'The administrator password should must be between 1 - 30 characters.' There are two input fields: 'New Password:' and 'Retype to Confirm:'. At the bottom are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Ignore'.

- 5 It is highly recommended to change your password. To change your password, type a new password, retype it to confirm it, and click **Apply**. Otherwise, click **Ignore** if you do not want to change your password right now. The **Options** screen should appear.

**Figure 7** Select Mode Screen

**6** In the **Options** screen,

- Click **Go to Wizard setup** if you are logging in for the first time or if you want to make basic changes. See [Chapter 3 on page 47](#) for more information.
- Click **Go to Advanced setup** if you want to configure features that are not available in the wizards. The main screen appears. See [Section 2.4 on page 42](#) for more information.
- Click **Exit** if you want to log out.

**Note:** For security reasons, the ZyXEL Device automatically logs you out if you do not use the web configurator for five minutes. If this happens, log in again.

## 2.3 Resetting the ZyXEL Device

Reset the ZyXEL Device in the following situations:

- You forgot your password.
- You cannot access the device using the web configurator. Check **Troubleshooting** in the **Quick Start Guide** to make sure you cannot access the device anymore.

If you reset the ZyXEL Device, you lose all of the changes you have made. The ZyXEL Device re-loads its default settings, and the password resets to “1234”. You have to make all of your changes again.

**Note:** You will lose all of your changes when you push the **RESET** button.

To reset the ZyXEL Device,

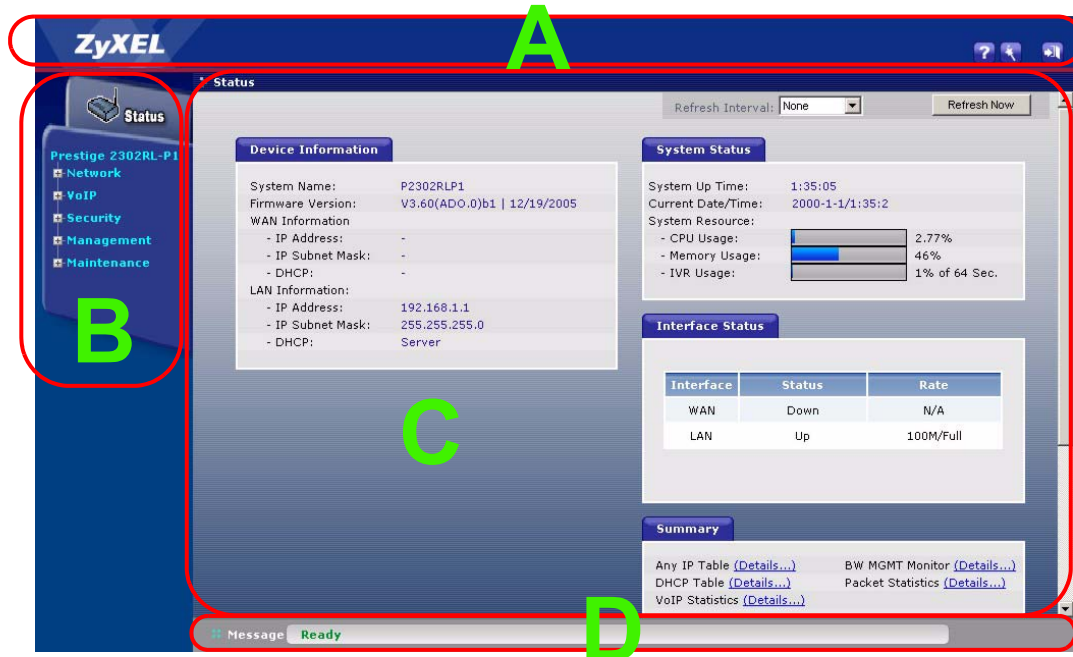
- 1** Make sure the **POWER** LED is on and not blinking.
- 2** Press and hold the **RESET** button for five to ten seconds. Release the **RESET** button when the **POWER** LED begins to blink. The default settings have been restored.

If the ZyXEL Device restarts automatically, wait for the ZyXEL Device to finish restarting, and log in to the web configurator. The password is “1234”. You have finished.

If the ZyXEL Device does not restart automatically, disconnect and reconnect the ZyXEL Device's power. Then, follow the directions above again.

## 2.4 Web Configurator Main Screen

Figure 8 Main Screen

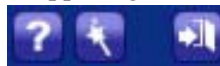


As illustrated above, the main screen is divided into these parts:

- A - title bar
- B - navigation panel
- C - main window
- D - status bar




### 2.4.1 Title Bar

The title bar provides some icons in the upper right corner.



The icons provide the following functions.

**Table 2** Web Configurator Icons in the Title Bar

ICON	DESCRIPTION
	<b>Help:</b> Click this icon to open the help page for the current screen.
	<b>Wizards:</b> Click this icon to open one of the web configurator wizards. See <a href="#">Chapter 3 on page 47</a> for more information.
	<b>Logout:</b> Click this icon to log out of the web configurator.

## 2.4.2 Navigation Panel

Use the menu items on the navigation panel to open screens to configure ZyXEL Device features. The following tables describe each menu item.

**Table 3** Navigation Panel Summary

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Status		This screen contains administrative and system-related information.
Network		
WAN	Internet Connection	Use this screen to set up ISP parameters, IP addresses, and MAC addresses.
	Advanced	Use this screen to set up DNS, RIP, multicasting, and Windows Networking for your WAN port.
	Traffic Redirect	Use this screen to specify up a backup gateway in case the main one is not available.
LAN	IP	Use this screen to set up your LAN's IP address and subnet mask.
	DHCP Setup	Use this screen to configure the ZyXEL Device's DHCP server and DNS server settings.
	Static DHCP	Use this screen to assign static IP addresses to MAC addresses.
	Client List	Use this screen to look at which network clients are using the DHCP server.
	IP Alias	Use this screen to partition your LAN interface into subnets.
	Advanced	Use this screen to set up RIP, multicasting, Any IP, and Windows Networking for your LAN port.
NAT	General	Use this screen to enable and disable NAT features.
	Port Forwarding	Use this screen to forward traffic to specific IP addresses based on the destination port.
	Trigger Port	Use this screen to change your ZyXEL Device's trigger port settings.
	ALG	Use this screen to enable and disable the ZyXEL Device's ALG.
VoIP		
SIP	SIP Settings	Use this screen to configure your ZyXEL Device's Voice over IP settings.
	QoS	Use this screen to configure your ZyXEL Device's Quality of Service settings.

**Table 3** Navigation Panel Summary

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION
Phone	Analog Phone	Use this screen to set up which SIP accounts use which phone ports for incoming and outgoing calls.
	Common	Use this screen to configure general phone port settings.
	Region	Use this screen to set up regional and call service settings.
Phone Book	Incoming Call Policy	Use this screen to set up call forwarding rules.
	Speed Dial	Use this screen to configure speed dial numbers for SIP phone numbers.
PSTN Line	General	Use this screen to configure your ZyXEL Device's settings for PSTN calls (ZyXEL Device P-2302RL-P1 only).
Security		
Firewall	General	Use this screen to activate/deactivate the firewall and log packets related to firewall rules.
	Services	Use this screen to enable service blocking (LAN to WAN firewall rules).
Content Filter	Filter	Use this screen to block sites containing certain keywords in the URL.
	Schedule	Use this screen to set the days and times for the ZyXEL Device to perform content filtering
Management		
Static Route	IP Static Route	Use this screen to configure IP static routes.
Bandwidth MGMT	Summary	Use this screen to enable bandwidth management on an interface and set the maximum allowed bandwidth and scheduler for the interface.
	Class Setup	Use this screen to define bandwidth classes.
	Monitor	Use this screen to view bandwidth class statistics.
Remote MGMT	WWW	Use this screen to configure through which interface(s) and from which IP address(es) users can use HTTP to manage the ZyXEL Device.
	Telnet	Use this screen to configure through which interface(s) and from which IP address(es) users can use Telnet to manage the ZyXEL Device.
	FTP	Use this screen to configure through which interface(s) and from which IP address(es) users can use FTP to access the ZyXEL Device.
	DNS	Use this screen to configure through which interface(s) and from which IP address(es) users can send DNS queries to the ZyXEL Device.
	Security	Use this screen to change your anti-probing settings.
UPnP	General	Use this screen to enable UPnP on the ZyXEL Device.
Maintenance		
System	General	Use this screen to configure general system settings.
	Dynamic DNS	Use this screen to set up dynamic DNS.
	Time Setting	Use this screen to change your ZyXEL Device's time and date.
Logs	View Log	Use this screen to view the logs for the categories that you selected.
	Log Settings	Use this screen to change your ZyXEL Device's log settings.
Tools	Firmware	Use this screen to upload firmware to your ZyXEL Device.
	Configuration	Use this screen to backup and restore the configuration or reset the factory defaults to your ZyXEL Device.
	Restart	Use this screen to reboot the ZyXEL Device without turning the power off.



### 2.4.3 Main Window

The main window shows the screen you select in the navigation panel. It is discussed in more detail in the rest of this document.

Right after you log in, the **Status** screen is displayed. See [Chapter 5 on page 71](#) for more information about the **Status** screen.

### 2.4.4 Status Bar

Check the status bar when you click **Apply** or **OK** to verify that the configuration has been updated.



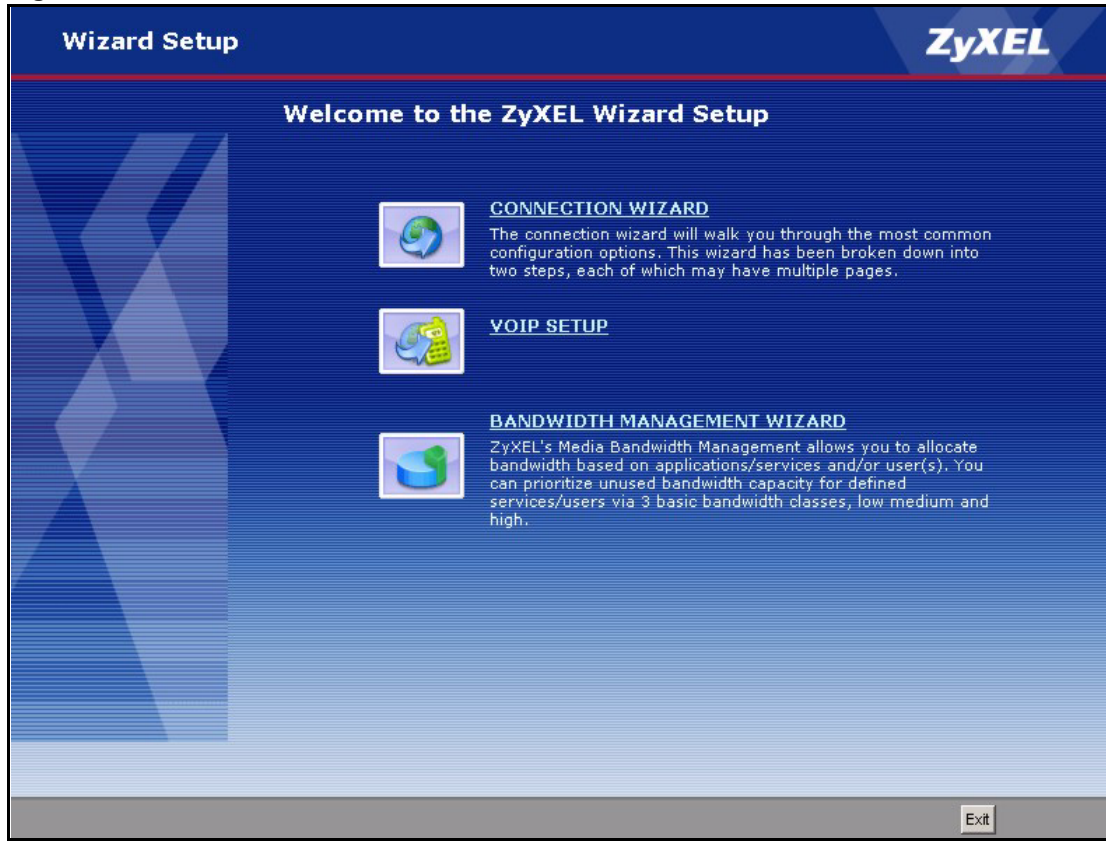
# CHAPTER 3

## Wizard Setup

This chapter provides information on the wizards in the web configurator.

### 3.1 Main Wizard Screen

Use this screen to open one of the wizards in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Go to Wizard setup** in the **Login Options** screen, or click the **Wizard** icon in the upper right corner of the main screen.

**Figure 9** Main Wizard Screen

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 4** Main Wizard Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
CONNECTION WIZARD	Click this to open the Connection Wizard. See <a href="#">Section 3.2 on page 48</a> .
VOIP SETUP	Click this to open the VoIP Setup Wizard. See <a href="#">Section 3.3 on page 59</a> .
BANDWIDTH MANAGEMENT WIZARD	Click this to open the Bandwidth Management Wizard. See <a href="#">Section 3.4 on page 63</a> .
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

## 3.2 Connection Wizard

Use this wizard to set up your Internet connection. See [Chapter 6 on page 83](#) for more information.

**Note:** You cannot use the [Connection Wizard](#) to set up your Internet connection in the following situations:

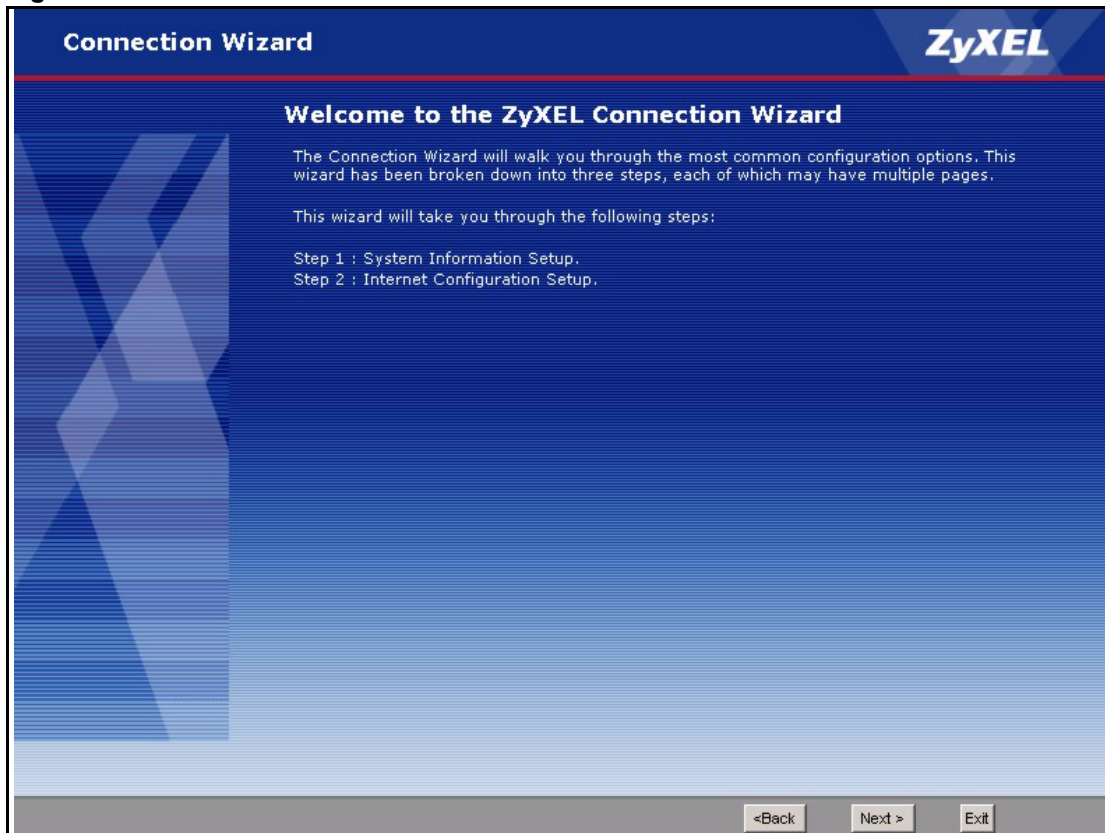
- You subscribe to a Roadrunner service.
- You use PPPoE encapsulation and the remote server cannot be discovered automatically.

In these cases, you must use the screens discussed in [Chapter 6 on page 83](#).

**Note:** Some ISPs, such as Telstra, send UDP heartbeat packets to verify that the customer is still online. In this case, you have to create a **WAN to LAN** firewall rule for those packets. Contact your ISP to find the correct port number.

### 3.2.1 Welcome

**Figure 10** Connection Wizard > Welcome



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 5** Connection Wizard > Welcome

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.

**Table 5** Connection Wizard > Welcome

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.2.2 System Information

**Note:** Usually, you should just click **Next** in this screen.

**Figure 11** Connection Wizard > System Information

The screenshot shows the 'System Information' screen in the Connection Wizard. The title bar reads 'Connection Wizard' and the ZyXEL logo is in the top right. A progress bar indicates 'STEP 1' is active and 'STEP 2' is next. The main content area is titled 'System Information' and contains two sections: 'System Name' and 'Domain Name'. The 'System Name' section has a text box with 'P2302RLP1' entered. The 'Domain Name' section has an empty text box. At the bottom, there are three buttons: '<Back', 'Next >', and 'Exit'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 6** Connection Wizard > System Information

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Enter your computer's "Computer Name". See <a href="#">Section 19.1 on page 199</a> for more information. This is for identification purposes, but some ISPs also check this field. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name entry that is propagated to DHCP clients on the LAN. If you leave this blank, the domain name obtained from the ISP is used. Use up to 38 alphanumeric characters. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and periods "." are accepted.

**Table 6** Connection Wizard > System Information

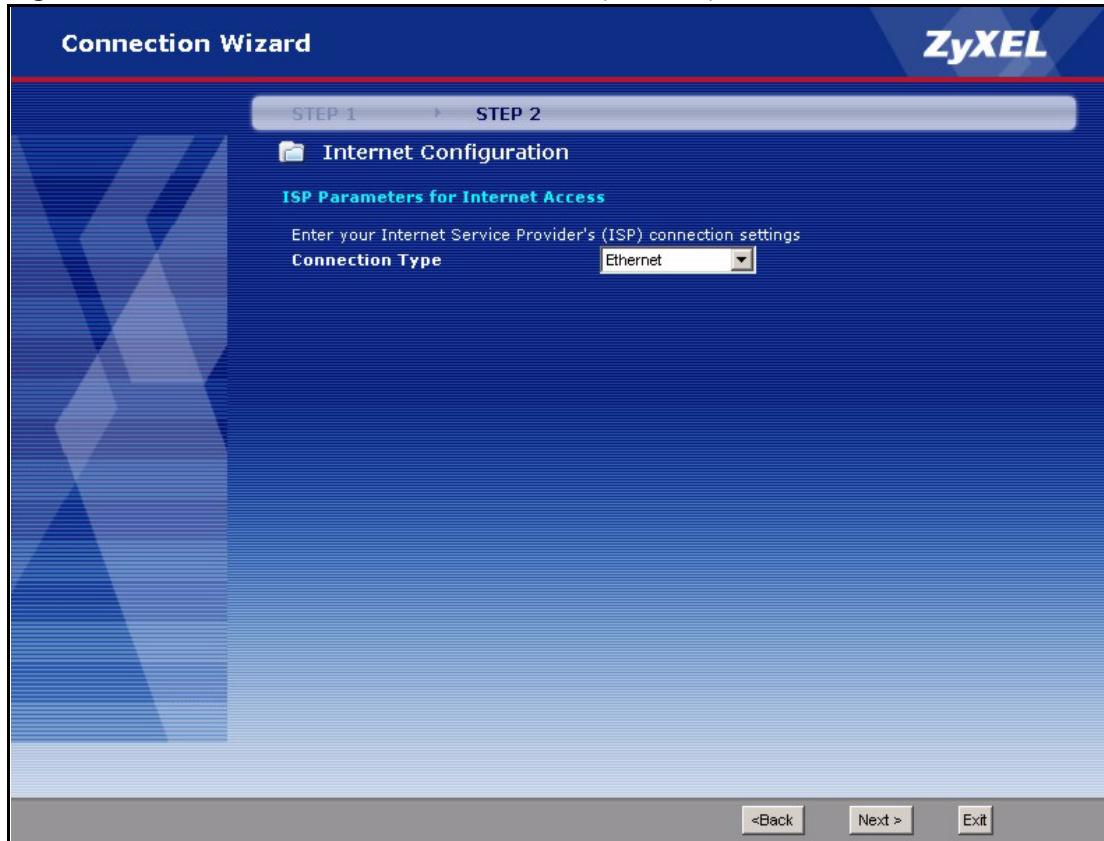
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.2.3 ISP Parameters

This screen depends on the **Connection Type** you select.

#### 3.2.3.1 Ethernet

**Note:** You cannot use the [Connection Wizard](#) if you subscribe to a Roadrunner service. You must use the screens discussed in [Chapter 6 on page 83](#) instead.

**Figure 12** Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (Ethernet)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 7** Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (Ethernet)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Connection Type	Select <b>Ethernet</b> .
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.2.3.2 PPPoE

Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) functions as a dial-up connection. PPPoE is an IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) standard specifying how a host personal computer interacts with a broadband modem (for example DSL, cable, wireless, etc.) to achieve access to high-speed data networks.

**Note:** You cannot use the [Connection Wizard](#) if the PPPoE remote server cannot be discovered automatically. You must use the screens discussed in [Chapter 6 on page 83](#) instead.



**Figure 13** Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (PPPoE)

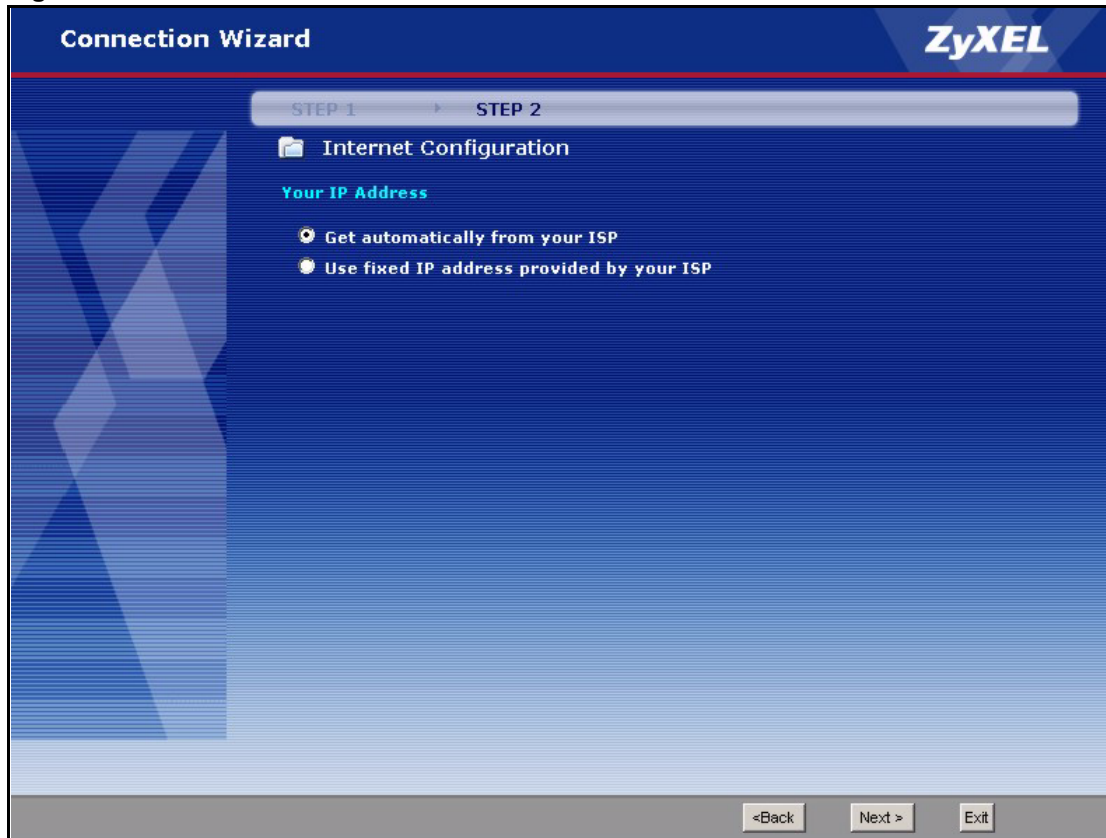
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 8** Connection Wizard > ISP Parameters (PPPoE)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Connection Type	Select <b>PPP over Ethernet</b> .
Service Name	Enter the PPP service name provided by your ISP. If your ISP did not provide a service name, leave this field blank.
User Name	Enter the user name provided by your ISP.
Password	Enter the password provided by your ISP.
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

## 3.2.4 Your IP Address

Figure 14 Connection Wizard > IP Address



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 9 Connection Wizard > IP Address

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Get automatically from your ISP	Select this if your ISP did not assign you a static IP address.
Use fixed IP address provided by your ISP	Select this if your ISP assigned you a static IP address.
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

## 3.2.5 WAN IP Address Assignment

This screen appears if you select **Use fixed IP address provided by your ISP** in the previous screen. Use this screen to set up your static IP address. The fields depend on the **Connection Type** you select in the [ISP Parameters](#) screen.

### 3.2.5.1 Ethernet

**Figure 15** Connection Wizard > IP Address (Ethernet)

The screenshot shows the 'Connection Wizard' interface for 'IP Address (Ethernet)'. It is currently on 'STEP 2' of the 'Internet Configuration' process. The 'WAN IP Address Assignment' section includes fields for 'My WAN IP Address', 'My WAN IP Subnet Mask', and 'Gateway IP Address', all set to '0.0.0.0'. The 'DNS Server Address Assignment' section includes fields for 'First DNS Server', 'Second DNS Server', and 'Third DNS Server', also set to '0.0.0.0'. Navigation buttons '<Back', 'Next >', and 'Exit' are located at the bottom right.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 10** Connection Wizard > IP Address (Ethernet)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
My WAN IP Address	Enter the IP address provided by your ISP.
My WAN IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the gateway provided by your ISP. If your ISP did not provide one, leave it blank.
DNS Server Address Assignment (if applicable)	
DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it. The ZyXEL Device uses a system DNS server (in the order you specify here) to resolve domain names for VPN, DDNS and the time server.	

**Table 10** Connection Wizard > IP Address (Ethernet)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
First DNS Server Second DNS Server Third DNS Server	Select <b>From ISP</b> if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information. (In this case, the ISP assigns the WAN IP address too. See <b>Network &gt; WAN &gt; Internet Connection</b> .) The field to the right is read-only, and it displays the IP address provided by your ISP.  Select <b>User-Defined</b> if you have the IP address of a DNS server. You might get it from your ISP or from your network. Enter the IP address in the field to the right.  Select <b>None</b> if you do not want to use this DNS server. If you select <b>None</b> for all of the DNS servers, you must use IP addresses to configure the ZyXEL Device and to access the Internet.
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.2.5.2 PPPoE

**Note:** You cannot use the [Connection Wizard](#) if the PPPoE remote server cannot be discovered automatically.

**Figure 16** Connection Wizard > IP Address (PPPoE)

**Connection Wizard** **ZyXEL**

STEP 1    STEP 2

Internet Configuration

**WAN IP Address Assignment**

My WAN IP Address    0.0.0.0

**DNS Server Address Assignment**

First DNS Server    0.0.0.0

Second DNS Server    0.0.0.0

Third DNS Server    0.0.0.0

<Back    Next >    Exit

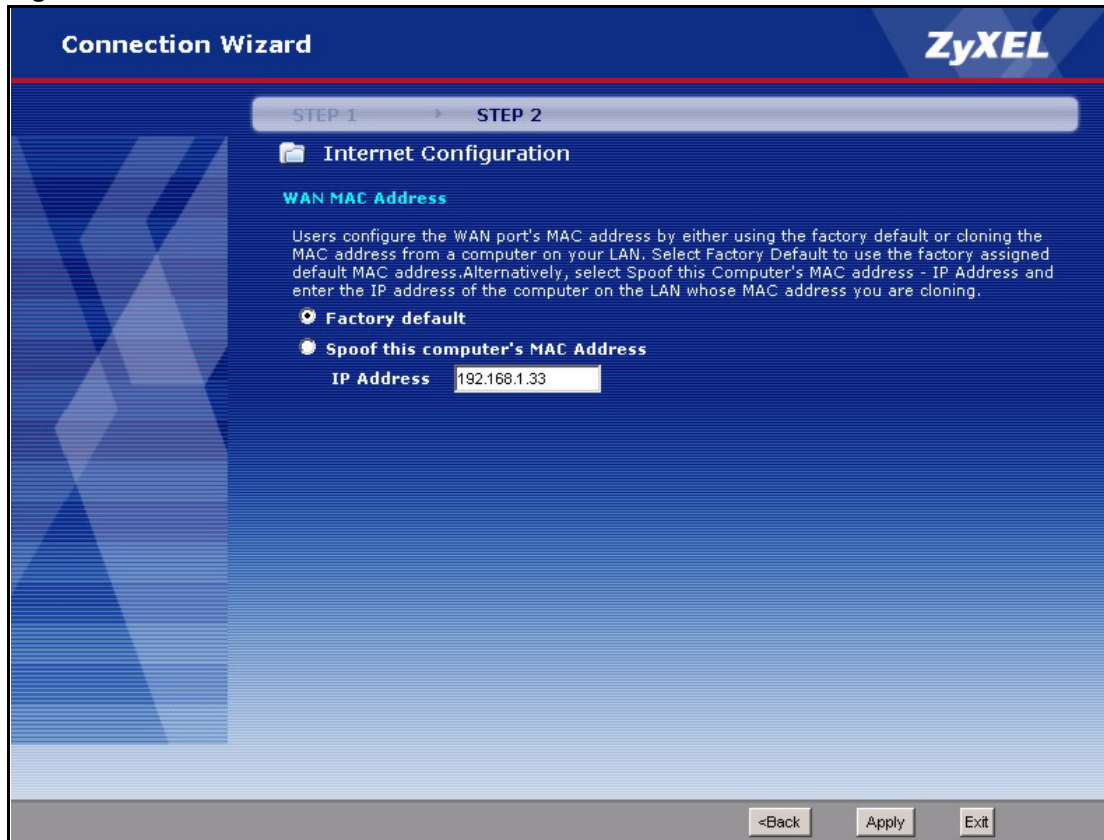
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 11** Connection Wizard > IP Address (PPPoE)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
My WAN IP Address	Enter the IP address provided by your ISP.
First DNS Server Second DNS Server Third DNS Server	Select <b>From ISP</b> if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information. (In this case, the ISP assigns the WAN IP address too. See <b>Network &gt; WAN &gt; Internet Connection</b> .) The field to the right is read-only, and it displays the IP address provided by your ISP. Select <b>User-Defined</b> if you have the IP address of a DNS server. You might get it from your ISP or from your network. Enter the IP address in the field to the right. Select <b>None</b> if you do not want to use this DNS server. If you select <b>None</b> for all of the DNS servers, you must use IP addresses to configure the ZyXEL Device and to access the Internet.
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

## 3.2.6 MAC Address

Figure 17 Connection Wizard > MAC Address



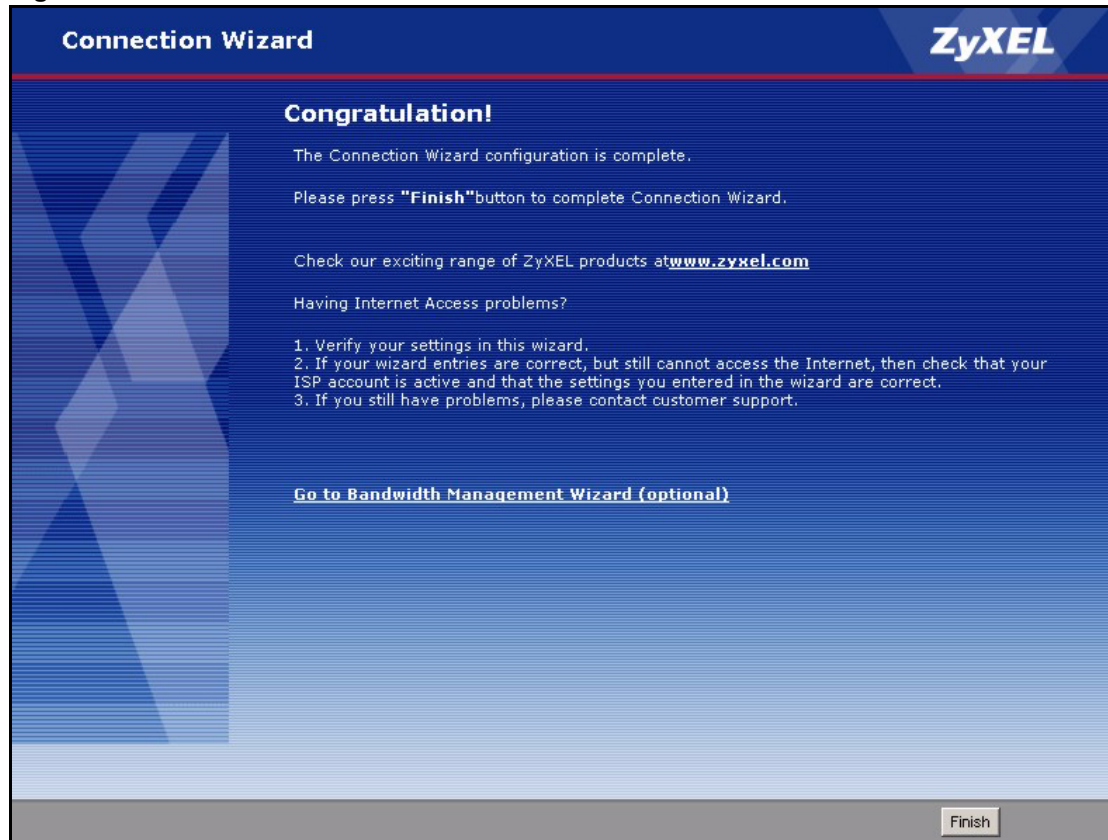
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12 Connection Wizard > MAC Address

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Factory default	Select this if you want to use the default MAC address for the ZyXEL Device.
Spoof this computer's MAC Address	Select this if you do not want to use the default MAC address for the ZyXEL Device.
IP Address	This field is enabled if you select <b>Spoof WAN MAC Address</b> . Enter the IP address of the computer whose MAC address you want the ZyXEL Device to use instead of the default MAC address.
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Apply >	Click this to configure the ZyXEL Device and go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

## 3.2.7 Finish

**Figure 18** Connection Wizard > Finish



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 13** Connection Wizard > Finish

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Go to Bandwidth Management Wizard (optional)	Click this to start the Bandwidth Management Wizard. See <a href="#">Section 3.4 on page 63</a> .
Finish	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

## 3.3 VoIP Setup Wizard

Use this wizard to set up your VoIP account(s). Leave the default settings in fields if your VoIP service provider (the company that lets you make phone calls over the Internet) did not provide any information. See [Chapter 9 on page 115](#) for more information.

**Note:** You must have a SIP account before you can use this wizard.

### 3.3.1 SIP Settings

**Figure 19** VoIP Setup Wizard > SIP Settings

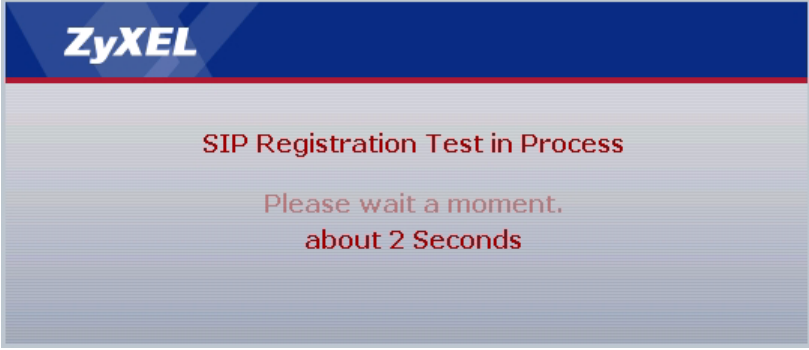
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 14** VoIP Setup Wizard > SIP Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP1 Settings SIP2 Settings	
SIP Number	Enter your SIP number. In the full SIP URI (like <a href="#">1234@VoIP-provider.com</a> ), this is the part before the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII characters.
SIP Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP server provided by your VoIP service provider. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters. It does not matter whether the SIP server is a proxy, redirect or register server.
SIP Service Domain	Enter the SIP service domain name. In the full SIP URI (like <a href="#">1234@VoIP-provider.com</a> ), this is the part after the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII Extended set characters.
Authentication	
User Name	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters.
Password	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII Extended set characters.

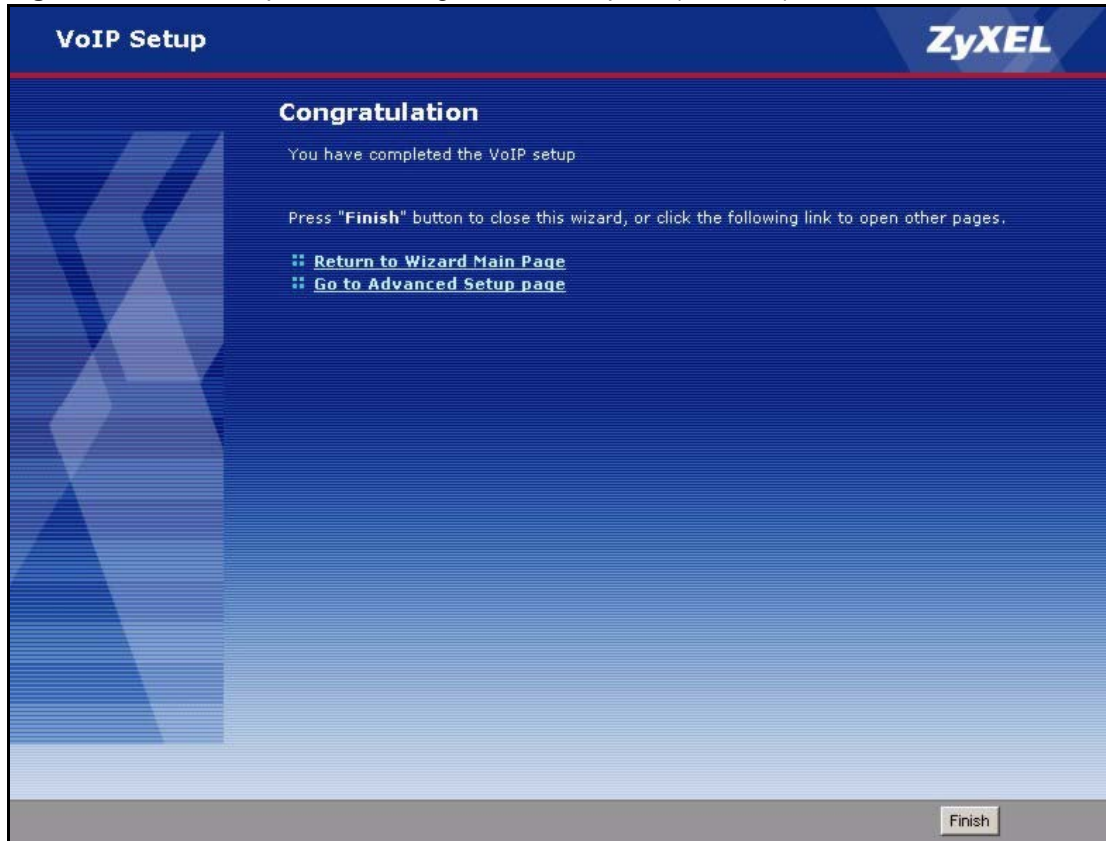


**Table 14** VoIP Setup Wizard > SIP Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Check here to set up SIP2 settings	This field is available in the <b>SIP1 Settings</b> screen. Select this if you want to set up the SIP2 account, as well as the SIP1 account.
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	<p>Click this to go to the next screen. If you select <b>Check here to set up SIP2 settings</b>, the <b>SIP Settings</b> screen appears again for SIP2. Otherwise, the ZyXEL Device tries to register your SIP account(s). The following screen appears.</p> <p><b>Figure 20</b> VoIP Setup Wizard &gt; Registration Test</p>  <p>Wait until it finishes.</p>
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.3.2 Registration Complete

This screen depends on whether or not the ZyXEL Device successfully registered your SIP account(s).

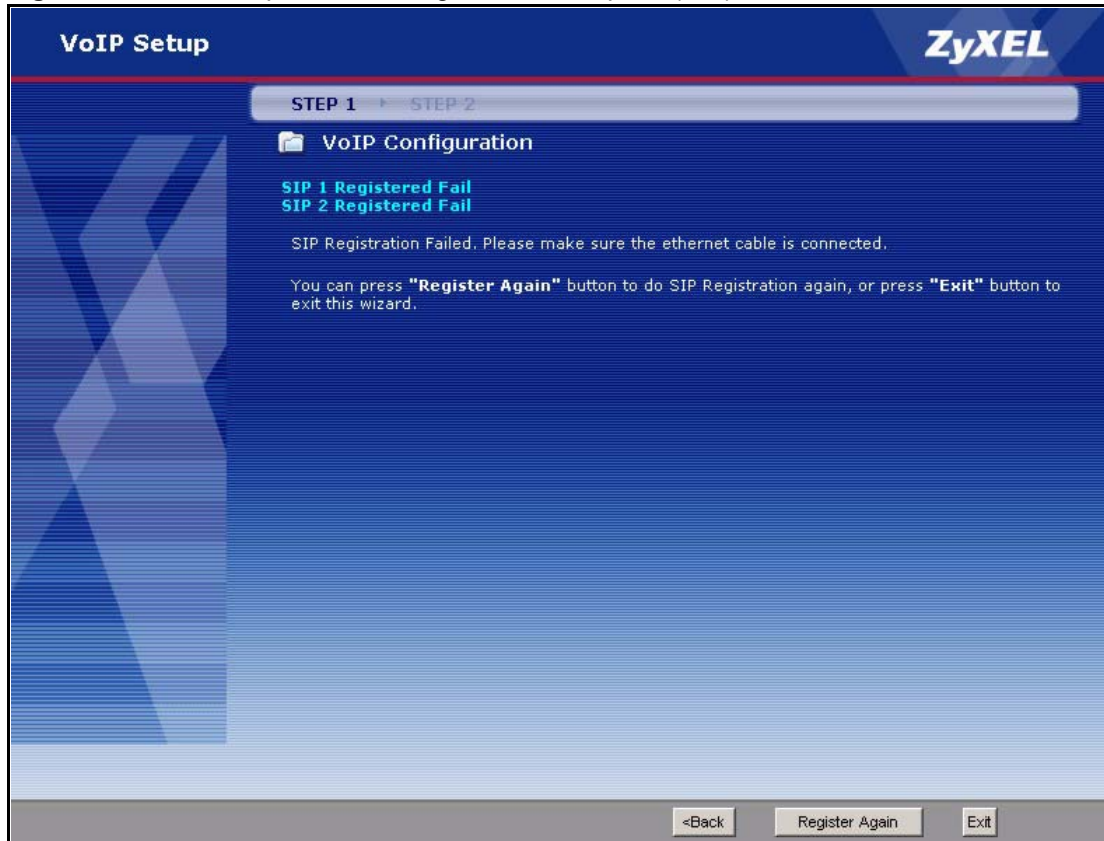
**Figure 21** VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Success)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 15** VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Success)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Return to Wizard Main Page	Click this to open the main wizard screen. See <a href="#">Section 3.1 on page 47</a> .
Go to Advanced Setup page	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.
Finish	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

If the ZyXEL Device cannot register your SIP account(s), see the Quick Start Guide for troubleshooting suggestions.

**Figure 22** VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Fail)

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 16** VoIP Setup Wizard > Registration Complete (Fail)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Register Again	Click this if you want the ZyXEL Device to try to register your SIP account(s) again.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen. The ZyXEL Device saves the information you provided.

### 3.4 Bandwidth Management Wizard

Use this wizard to control how much traffic can pass through your ZyXEL Device and the priority of each service (application) that can use it. Each service you select is guaranteed a small amount of bandwidth. The remaining bandwidth is divided by priority. If one service has higher priority than another, then the first service uses as much of the remaining bandwidth as it needs. If there is no more bandwidth for the second service, then it waits. If you do not select a service in this wizard (or if you do not find a particular service), the service can still use bandwidth, but it does not have any guaranteed amount and it has the lowest priority. See [Chapter 15 on page 161](#) for more information.

### 3.4.1 Welcome

**Figure 23** Bandwidth Management Wizard > Welcome



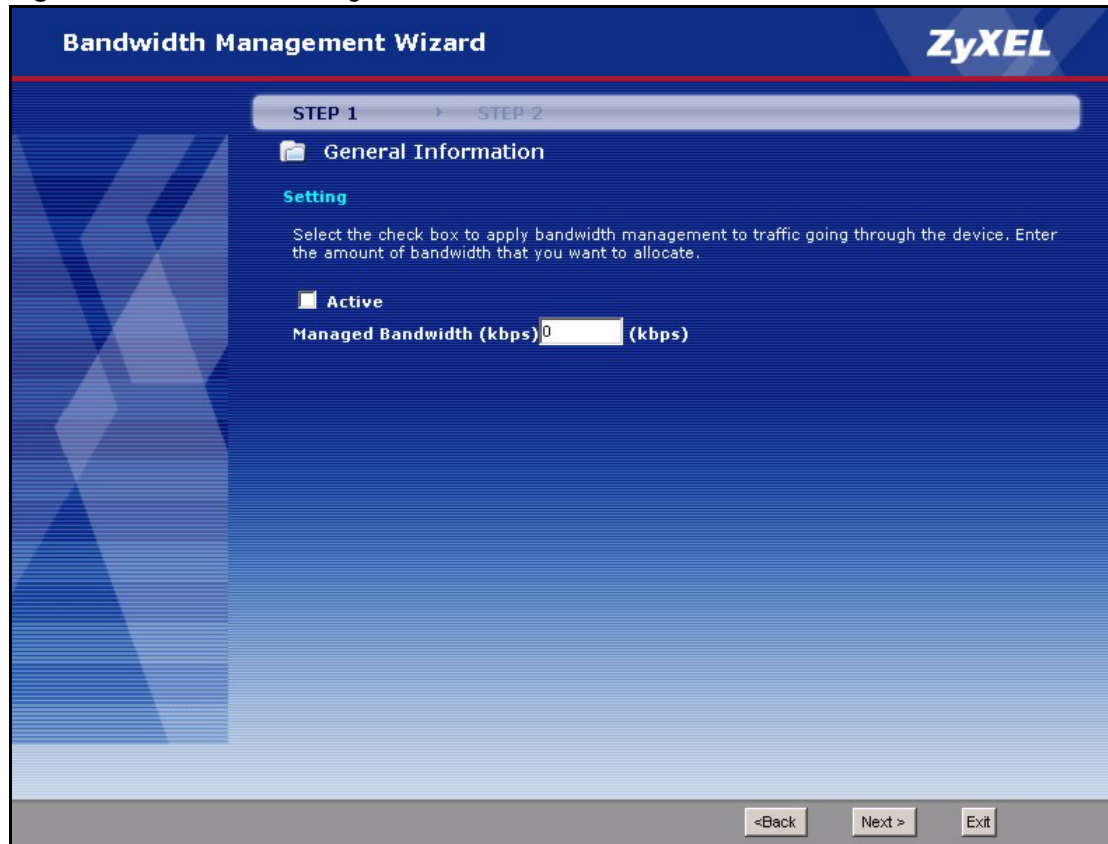
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 17** Bandwidth Management Wizard > Welcome

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

## 3.4.2 General Information

**Figure 24** Bandwidth Management Wizard > General Information



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 18** Bandwidth Management Wizard > General Information

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable bandwidth management. Bandwidth management applies to all traffic flowing through the router.
Managed Bandwidth (kbps)	Enter the total amount of traffic the device can send to the WAN. It is recommended to set this speed to what the device connected to the WAN can handle. For example, set this field to 1000 kbps if a broadband device connected to the WAN port has a maximum speed of 1000 kbps. This does not affect the total amount of traffic the device can send to the LAN. See <b>Management &gt; Bandwidth MGMT &gt; Summary</b> to do this.
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.4.3 Services Setup

**Figure 25** Bandwidth Management Wizard > Services Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 19** Bandwidth Management Wizard > Services Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service	<p>Select the service(s) that should have higher priority when bandwidth is allocated. If you do not select a service or if you do not see it in the list, the service can still use bandwidth. However, it has the lowest priority.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must select at least one service in this screen.</p> <p>Each service you select (except WWW) becomes a LAN sub-class and a WAN sub-class in <a href="#">Management &gt; Bandwidth MGMT &gt; Class Setup</a>. If you select <b>WWW</b>, it only becomes a LAN sub-class.</p>
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.4.4 Priority Setup

Figure 26 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Priority Setup

**Bandwidth Management Wizard** **ZyXEL**

STEP 1 STEP 2

**General Information**

**Priority**

Set bandwidth priorities for the services listed.

Select "High", "Mid" or "Low" to prioritize the bandwidth for each service. If the rules set up in this wizard are changed in the ADVANCED setup, then the service priority will be set to "Other".

Service	Priority
VoIP (SIP)	<input type="radio"/> High <input type="radio"/> Mid <input checked="" type="radio"/> Low <input type="radio"/> Others
FTP	<input type="radio"/> High <input type="radio"/> Mid <input checked="" type="radio"/> Low <input type="radio"/> Others
E-Mail	<input type="radio"/> High <input type="radio"/> Mid <input checked="" type="radio"/> Low <input type="radio"/> Others
WWW	<input type="radio"/> High <input type="radio"/> Mid <input checked="" type="radio"/> Low <input type="radio"/> Others

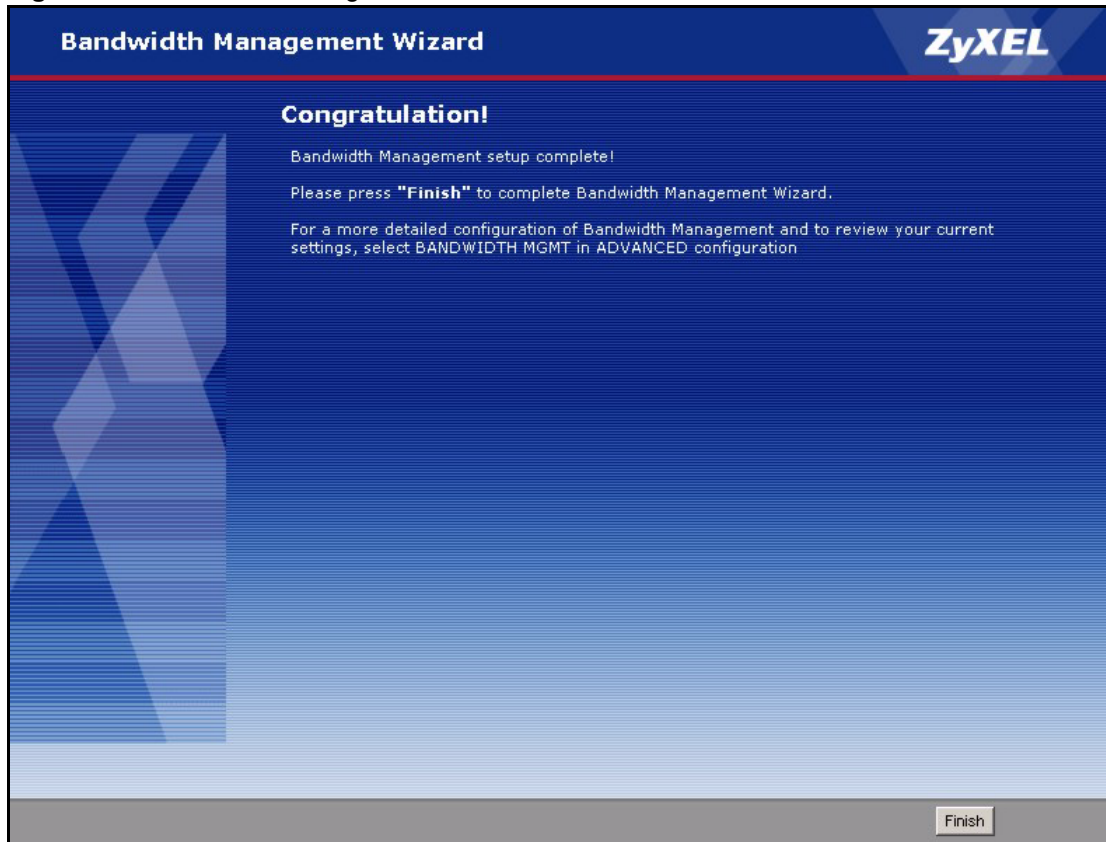
The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 Bandwidth Management Wizard > Priority Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service	This column displays each service you selected in the previous screen.
Priority	Set the priority of each service. If a service has higher priority than other services, then it can use as much remaining bandwidth as it needs. If there is no more bandwidth left, other services have to wait. Select <b>Others</b> only if you want to set up the sub-class manually in the <a href="#">Bandwidth Class Edit Screen</a> .
< Back	Click this to go to the previous screen.
Next >	Click this to go to the next screen.
Exit	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.

### 3.4.5 Finish

**Figure 27** Bandwidth Management Wizard > Finish



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 21** Bandwidth Management Wizard > Finish

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Finish	Click this to close this screen and return to the main screen.



# CHAPTER 4

## Bridge Mode

The ZyXEL Device supports two modes, **Router** and **Bridge**. Usually, you should use **Router** mode because it supports all the features discussed in this User's Guide. However, you might use **Bridge** mode in the following situation:

- There is another router in the network; *and*
- You only want to use the ZyXEL Device for VoIP and Internet access. You do not want to use other features, such as the firewall, even with their default settings.

### 4.1 Bridge Mode Overview

In **Bridge** mode, the ZyXEL Device acts like a bridge, instead of a router. A bridge is simpler than a router. It may be more efficient in small networks, but it also offers fewer features. In **Bridge** mode, your ZyXEL Device only supports the following features, by screen.

**Table 22** Bridge Mode: Features by Screen

LINK	TAB	FUNCTION IN BRIDGE MODE
Status		Same as in router mode
Network		
WAN	Internet Connection	Same as in router mode; use the factory-default MAC address.
	Other screens	None
LAN	All screens	None
NAT	All screens	None
VoIP	All screens	Same as in router mode
Security	All screens	None
Management		
Remote MGMT	All screens	Same as in router mode
Other screens		None
Maintenance		
System	General	Same as in router mode; you cannot re-configure the <b>Management IP Address</b> .
	Dynamic DNS	None
	Time Setting	Same as in router mode
Logs	All screens	Same as in router mode
Tools	All screens	Same as in router mode

## 4.2 Bridge Mode Procedure

Follow these steps to change the ZyXEL Device into **Bridge** mode.

- 1 Log in to the web configurator. (See [Chapter 2 on page 39](#).)
- 2 Click **Maintenance > System > General**.
- 3 In the **Mode** field, select **Bridge**.
- 4 In the **Management IP Address** field, enter the IP address you want to use to access the ZyXEL Device in **Bridge** mode. For example, enter 192.168.5.1.
- 5 Click **Apply**.

The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts. When the **POWER** LED stops blinking and stays on, follow the directions in [Chapter 2 on page 39](#) to log in to the web configurator again. Use the **Management IP Address** you set up in step 4. If your computer's IP address is in a different subnet, follow the directions in [Appendix B on page 235](#) to change your computer's IP address.

When you log in to the web configurator, you can still see every screen in [Table 3 on page 43](#), even if the feature is not available in **Bridge** mode (in [Table 22 on page 69](#)). However, if you configure a feature that is not available in **Bridge** mode, your changes have no effect until you change back to **Router** mode.

If you want to change back to **Router** mode, follow these steps.

- 1 Log in to the web configurator. (See [Chapter 2 on page 39](#).)
- 2 Click **Maintenance > System > General**.
- 3 In the **Mode** field, select **Router**.
- 4 Click **Apply**.
- 5 The ZyXEL Device asks you if you want to enable the firewall and NAT. Select **OK** or **Cancel**.

**Figure 28** Prompt Before Change to Router Mode



The ZyXEL Device automatically restarts. Use the IP address in **Network > LAN > IP** to log in to the web configurator again. You might have to change your computer's IP address again.

# CHAPTER 5

## Status Screens

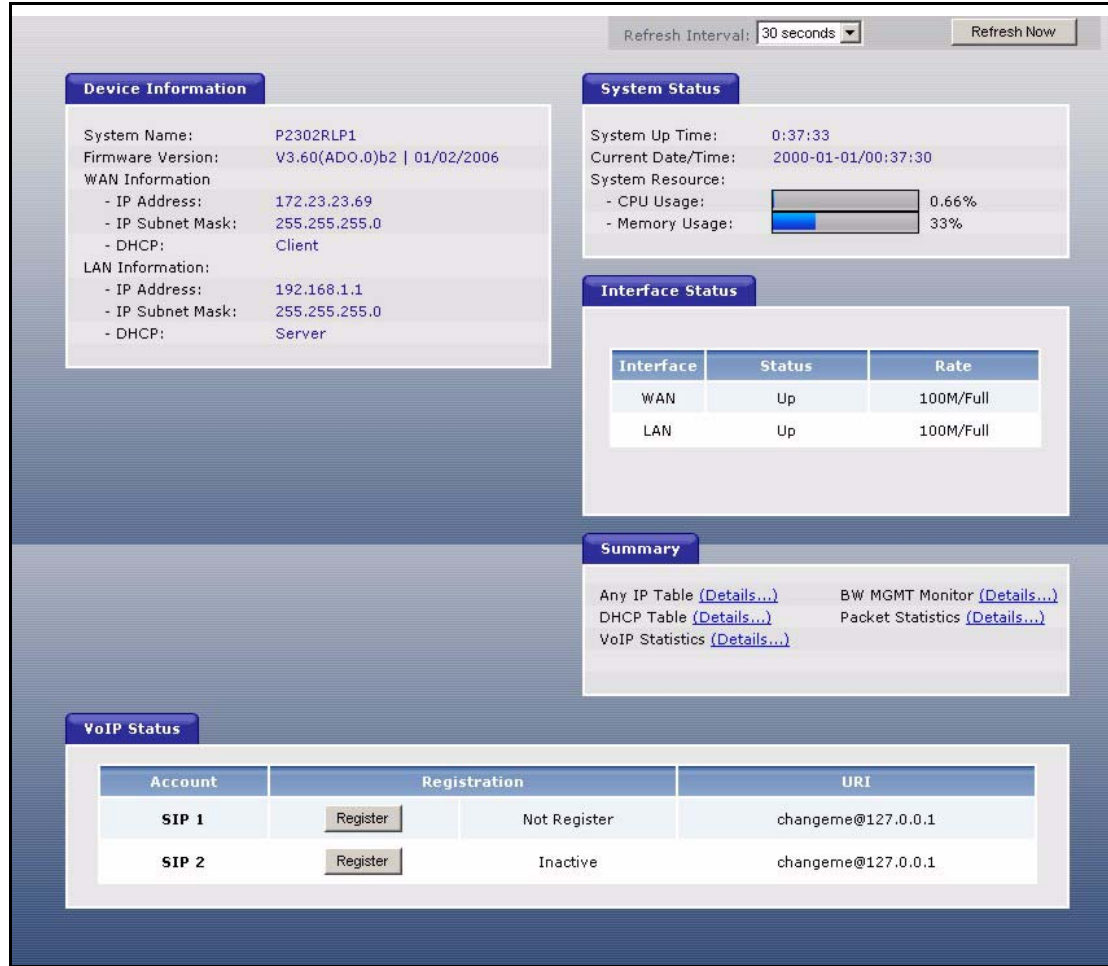
Use the **Status** screens to look at the current status of the device, system resources, interfaces (LAN and WAN), and SIP accounts. You can also register and unregister SIP accounts. The **Status** screen also provides detailed information from Any IP and DHCP and statistics from VoIP, bandwidth management, and traffic.

### 5.1 Status Screen

Use this screen to look at the current status of the device, system resources, interfaces (LAN and WAN), and SIP accounts. You can also register and unregister SIP accounts.

Click **Status** to open this screen.

**Figure 29** Status Screen



Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 23** Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Refresh Interval	Enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to update this screen.
Refresh Now	Click this to update this screen immediately.
Device Information	
System Name	This field displays the ZyXEL Device system name. It is used for identification. You can change this in the <b>Configuration Wizard</b> or <b>Maintenance &gt; System &gt; General</b> screen.
Firmware Version	This field displays the current version of the firmware inside the ZyXEL Device. It also shows the date the firmware version was created. You can change the firmware version by uploading new firmware in <b>Maintenance &gt; Tools &gt; Firmware</b> .
WAN Information	
IP Address	This field displays the current IP address of the ZyXEL Device in the WAN.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the current subnet mask in the WAN.

**Table 23** Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DHCP	<p>This field displays what DHCP services the ZyXEL Device is using in the WAN. Choices are:</p> <p><b>Client</b> - The ZyXEL Device is a DHCP client in the WAN. Its IP address comes from a DHCP server on the WAN.</p> <p><b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device is not using any DHCP services in the WAN. It has a static IP address.</p> <p>If you are not using Roadrunner on Ethernet, you can change this in <b>Network &gt; WAN</b>. If you are using Roadrunner on Ethernet, this is controlled by Roadrunner.</p>
LAN Information	
IP Address	This field displays the current IP address of the ZyXEL Device in the LAN.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the current subnet mask in the LAN.
DHCP	<p>This field displays what DHCP services the ZyXEL Device is providing to the LAN. Choices are:</p> <p><b>Server</b> - The ZyXEL Device is a DHCP server in the LAN. It assigns IP addresses to other computers in the LAN.</p> <p><b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device is not providing any DHCP services to the WAN. You can change this in <b>Network &gt; LAN &gt; DHCP Setup</b>.</p>
System Status	
System Up Time	This field displays how long the ZyXEL Device has been running since it last started up. The ZyXEL Device starts up when you plug it in, when you restart it ( <b>Maintenance &gt; Tools &gt; Restart</b> ), or when you reset it (see <a href="#">Section 2.3 on page 41</a> ).
Current Date/Time	This field displays the current date and time in the ZyXEL Device. You can change this in <b>Maintenance &gt; System &gt; Time Setting</b> .
System Resource	
CPU Usage	This field displays what percentage of the ZyXEL Device's processing ability is currently used. When this percentage is close to 100%, the ZyXEL Device is running at full load, and the throughput is not going to improve anymore. If you want some applications to have more throughput, you should turn off other applications (for example, using bandwidth management; see <a href="#">Chapter 15 on page 161</a> ).
Memory Usage	This field displays what percentage of the ZyXEL Device's memory is currently used. Usually, this percentage should not increase much. If memory usage does get close to 100%, the ZyXEL Device is probably becoming unstable, and you should restart the device. See <a href="#">Section 21.2.5 on page 230</a> , or turn off the device (unplug the power) for a few seconds.
Interface Status	
Interface	This column displays each interface the ZyXEL Device has.
Status	<p>This field indicates whether or not the ZyXEL Device is using the interface.</p> <p><b>Up</b> - The ZyXEL Device is using the interface.</p> <p><b>Down</b> - The ZyXEL Device is not using the interface.</p>

**Table 23** Status Screen

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rate	<p>If the interface uses Ethernet encapsulation, this column displays the port speed and the Ethernet duplex setting. Duplex settings are:</p> <p><b>Full</b> - The ZyXEL Device is using full-duplex Ethernet.</p> <p><b>Half</b> - The ZyXEL Device is using half-duplex Ethernet.</p> <p>You cannot change the Ethernet duplex setting in the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>If this interface uses PPPoE encapsulation, this column displays the port speed and the status of the call.</p> <p><b>Down</b> - The connection is not available.</p> <p><b>Dial</b> - The ZyXEL Device is making the call.</p> <p><b>Idle</b> - The call is connected.</p> <p><b>Drop</b> - The ZyXEL Device is ending the call.</p> <p>The LAN interface always uses Ethernet encapsulation. You can change the encapsulation of the WAN interface in <b>Network &gt; WAN &gt; Internet Connection</b>.</p>
Summary	
Any IP Table	Click <b>(Details ...)</b> to open the <b>Any IP Table</b> window. See <a href="#">Section 5.2 on page 75</a> .
DHCP Table	Click <b>(Details ...)</b> to open the <b>DHCP Table</b> window. See <a href="#">Section 5.3 on page 75</a> .
VoIP Statistics	Click <b>(Details ...)</b> to open the <b>VoIP Statistics</b> window. See <a href="#">Section 5.4 on page 76</a> .
BW MGMT Monitor	Click <b>(Details ...)</b> to open the <b>BW MGMT Monitor</b> window. See <a href="#">Section 5.5 on page 78</a> .
Packet Statistics	Click <b>(Details ...)</b> to open the <b>Packet Statistics</b> window. See <a href="#">Section 5.6 on page 80</a> .
VoIP Status	
Account	This column displays each SIP account in the ZyXEL Device.
Registration	<p>This field displays the current registration status of the SIP account. You have to register SIP accounts with a SIP server to use VoIP.</p> <p>If the SIP account is already registered with the SIP server,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Click <b>Unregister</b> to delete the SIP account's registration in the SIP server. This does not cancel your SIP account, but it deletes the mapping between your SIP identity and your IP address or domain name.</li> <li>• The second field displays <b>Registered</b>.</li> </ul> <p>If the SIP account is not registered with the SIP server,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Click <b>Register</b> to have the ZyXEL Device attempt to register the SIP account with the SIP server.</li> <li>• The second field displays the reason the account is not registered.</li> </ul> <p><b>Inactive</b> - The SIP account is not active. You can activate it in <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Settings</b>.</p> <p><b>Not Register</b> - The SIP account is active, but you have not tried to register it yet.</p> <p><b>Register Fail</b> - The last time the ZyXEL Device tried to register the SIP account with the SIP server, the attempt failed.</p>
URI	This field displays the account number and service domain of the SIP account. You can change these in <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Settings</b> .

## 5.2 Any IP Table Window

To access this screen, open the **Status** screen (see [Section 5.1 on page 71](#)), and click **(Details ...)** next to **Any IP Table**.

**Figure 30** Any IP Table Window



Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 24** Any IP Table Window

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field is a sequential value. It is not associated with a specific entry.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of each computer that is using the ZyXEL Device but is in a different subnet than the ZyXEL Device.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of the computer that is using the ZyXEL Device but is in a different subnet than the ZyXEL Device.
Refresh	Click this to update this screen.

## 5.3 DHCP Table Window

To access this screen, open the **Status** screen (see [Section 5.1 on page 71](#)), and click **(Details ...)** next to **DHCP Table**.

**Figure 31** DHCP Table Window

DHCP Table			
#	IP Address	Host Name	MAC Address
1	192.168.1.33	tw11477-02	00:50:8d:48:59:1f

Refresh

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 25** DHCP Table Window

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field is a sequential value. It is not associated with a specific entry.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address the ZyXEL Device assigned to a computer in the network.
Host Name	This field displays the system name of the computer to which the ZyXEL Device assigned the IP address.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of the computer to which the ZyXEL Device assigned the IP address.
Refresh	Click this to update this screen.

## 5.4 VoIP Statistics Window

To access this screen, open the **Status** screen (see [Section 5.1 on page 71](#)), and click **(Details ...)** next to **VoIP Statistics**.



**Figure 32** VoIP Statistics Window

The screenshot shows a window titled 'VoIP Statistics Window'. It contains two main sections: 'SIP Status' and 'Call Statistics'. At the bottom, there is a 'Poll Interval' field set to 5 seconds, with 'Set Interval' and 'Stop' buttons.

SIP Status:							
Account	Registration	Last Registration	URI	Protocol	Message Waiting	Last Incoming Number	Last Outgoing Number
SIP1	Register Fail	N/A	changeme@127.0.0.1	UDP	No	N/A	N/A
SIP2	Inactive	N/A	changeme@127.0.0.1	UDP	No	N/A	N/A

Call Statistics:									
Phone	Hook	Status	Codec	Peer Number	Duration	TxPkts	RxPkts	Tx B/s	Rx B/s
Phone1	On	N/A	N/A	N/A	0:00:00	0	0	0	0
Phone2	On	N/A	N/A	N/A	0:00:00	0	0	0	0

At the bottom of the window, there is a 'Poll Interval' field set to 5 sec, with 'Set Interval' and 'Stop' buttons.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 26** VoIP Statistics Window

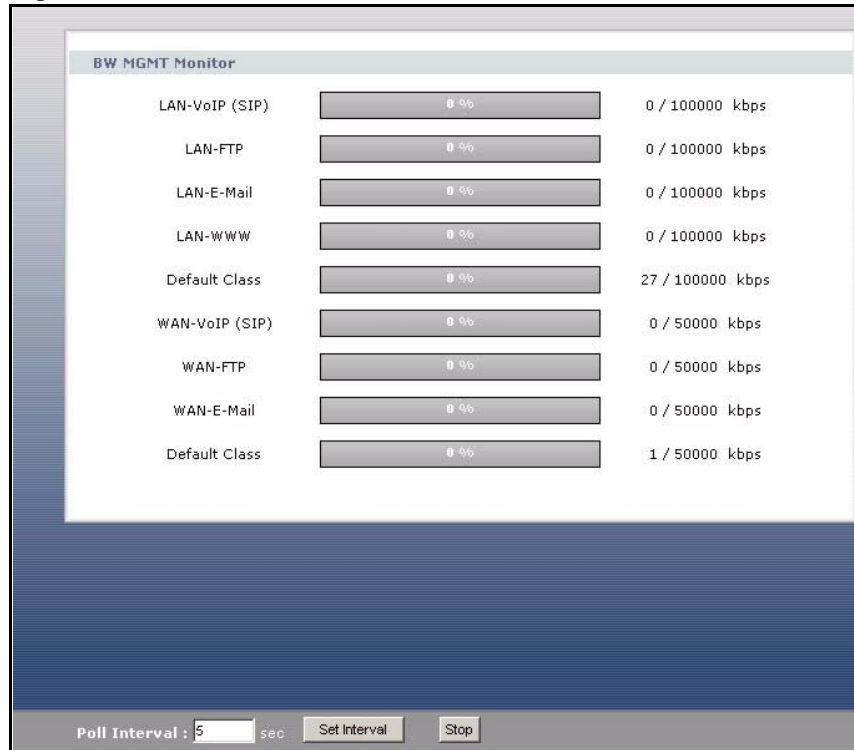
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Status	
Account	This column displays each SIP account in the ZyXEL Device.
Registration	This field displays the current registration status of the SIP account. You can change this in the <b>Status</b> screen. <b>Registered</b> - The SIP account is registered with a SIP server. <b>Register Fail</b> - The last time the ZyXEL Device tried to register the SIP account with the SIP server, the attempt failed. The ZyXEL Device automatically tries to register the SIP account when you turn on the ZyXEL Device or when you activate it. <b>Inactive</b> - The SIP account is not active. You can activate it in <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Settings</b> .
Last Registration	This field displays the last time you successfully registered the SIP account. It displays <b>N/A</b> if you never successfully registered this account.
URI	This field displays the account number and service domain of the SIP account. You can change these in <b>VoIP &gt; SIP &gt; SIP Settings</b> .
Protocol	This field displays the transport protocol the SIP account is currently using.
Message Waiting	This field indicates whether or not there are any messages waiting for the SIP account.
Last Incoming Number	This field displays the last number that called the SIP account. It displays <b>N/A</b> if no number has ever dialed the SIP account.
Last Outgoing Number	This field displays the last number the SIP account called. It displays <b>N/A</b> if the SIP account has never dialed a number.
Call Statistics	
Phone	This field displays each phone port in the ZyXEL Device.

**Table 26** VoIP Statistics Window

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Hook	This field indicates whether the phone is on the hook or off the hook. <b>On</b> - The phone is hanging up or already hung up. <b>Off</b> - The phone is dialing, calling, or connected.
Status	This field displays the current status of each call. <b>DIAL</b> - The ZyXEL Device is dialing the current call. <b>RING</b> - The phone is ringing because there is an incoming call. <b>Process</b> - The call is connected and in process. <b>DROP</b> - The ZyXEL Device is hanging up (disconnecting) the current call. <b>DISC</b> - The ZyXEL Device has hung up. <b>N/A</b> - There is no phone connected to this phone port.
Codec	This field displays the type of voice compression used in the current call.
Peer Number	If the current call is a peer-to-peer call, this field displays the SIP number of the other party. Otherwise, it displays <b>N/A</b> .
Duration	This field displays how long the current call has lasted.
Tx Pkts	This field displays the number of packets the ZyXEL Device has transmitted in the current call.
Rx Pkts	This field displays the number of packets the ZyXEL Device has received in the current call.
Tx B/s	This field displays how quickly the ZyXEL Device has transmitted packets in the current call. The rate is the number of kilobits transmitted one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
Rx B/s	This field displays how quickly the ZyXEL Device has received packets in the current call. The rate is the number of kilobits received one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
Poll Interval	Enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to update this screen, and click <b>Set Interval</b> .
Set Interval	Click this to make the ZyXEL Device update the screen based on the amount of time you specified in <b>Poll Interval</b> .
Stop	Click this to make the ZyXEL Device stop updating the screen.

## 5.5 BW MGMT Monitor Window

To access this screen, open the **Status** screen (see [Section 5.1 on page 71](#)), and click (**Details ...**) next to **BW MGMT Monitor**.

**Figure 33** BW MGMT Monitor Window

The types of traffic shown in this screen do not depend on your settings in the [Bandwidth Management Wizard](#) or in [Bandwidth MGMT](#). Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 27** BW MGMT Monitor Window

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LAN-VoIP (SIP)	This field displays how much SIP traffic is going to the LAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the LAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
LAN-FTP	This field displays how much FTP traffic is going to the LAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the LAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
LAN-E-Mail	This field displays how much e-mail went to the LAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the LAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
LAN-WWW	This field displays how much web traffic went to the LAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the LAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
Default Class	This field displays how much traffic that is not allocated to any sub-class went to the LAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the LAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed). This might include SIP traffic, FTP traffic, e-mail, or web traffic, depending on what traffic is allocated to sub-classes. You can change what traffic is allocated to sub-classes in <b>Management &gt; Bandwidth MGMT &gt; Class Setup</b> .
WAN-VoIP (SIP)	This field displays how much SIP traffic went to the WAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the WAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).

**Table 27** BW MGMT Monitor Window

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
WAN-FTP	This field displays how much FTP traffic went to the WAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the WAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
WAN-E-Mail	This field displays how much e-mail went to the WAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the WAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
Default Class	This field displays how much traffic that is not allocated to any sub-class went to the WAN each second. The rate is the number of kilobits that went to the WAN one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed). This might include SIP traffic, FTP traffic, e-mail, or web traffic, depending on what traffic is allocated to sub-classes. You can change what traffic is allocated to sub-classes in <b>Management &gt; Bandwidth MGMT &gt; Class Setup</b> .
Poll Interval	Enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to update this screen, and click <b>Set Interval</b> .
Set Interval	Click this to make the ZyXEL Device update the screen based on the amount of time you specified in <b>Poll Interval</b> .
Stop	Click this to make the ZyXEL Device stop updating the screen.

## 5.6 Packet Statistics Window

To access this screen, open the **Status** screen (see [Section 5.1 on page 71](#)), and click (**Details ...**) next to **Packet Statistics**.

**Figure 34** Packet Statistics Window

Port	Status	TxPkts	RxPkts	Collisions	Tx B/s	Rx B/s	Up Time
WAN	100M/Full	3589	11040	0	0	192	0:24:46
LAN	100M/Full	8271	5996	0	64	0	0:24:46

System Up Time : 0:24:52

Poll Interval : 5 sec    Set Interval    Stop

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 28** Packet Statistics Window

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays each port in the ZyXEL Device.
Status	<p>If the port is not connected to anything, this field displays <b>Down</b>.</p> <p>If the interface uses Ethernet encapsulation, this field displays the port speed and the Ethernet duplex setting. Duplex settings are:</p> <p><b>Full</b> - The ZyXEL Device is using full-duplex Ethernet.</p> <p><b>Half</b> - The ZyXEL Device is using half-duplex Ethernet.</p> <p>You cannot change the Ethernet duplex setting in the ZyXEL Device.</p> <p>If this interface uses PPPoE encapsulation, this field displays the port speed and the status of the call.</p> <p><b>Down</b> - The connection is not available.</p> <p><b>Dial</b> - The ZyXEL Device is making the call.</p> <p><b>Idle</b> - The call is connected.</p> <p><b>Drop</b> - The ZyXEL Device is ending the call.</p> <p>The LAN interface always uses Ethernet encapsulation. You can change the encapsulation of the WAN interface in <b>Network &gt; WAN &gt; Internet Connection</b>.</p>
Tx Pkts	This field displays the number of packets the ZyXEL Device has transmitted from the port.
Rx Pkts	This field displays the number of packets the ZyXEL Device has received from the port.
Collisions	This field displays the number of collisions detected by the port.
Tx B/s	This field displays how quickly the ZyXEL Device has transmitted packets from the port. The rate is the number of bytes transmitted one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
Rx B/s	This field displays how quickly the ZyXEL Device has received packets from the port. The rate is the number of bytes received one second before the last time the screen updated (refreshed).
Up Time	This is the total amount of time the port has been connected.

**Table 28** Packet Statistics Window

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Up Time	This field displays how long the ZyXEL Device has been running since it last started up. The ZyXEL Device starts up when you plug it in, when you restart it ( <b>Maintenance &gt; Tools &gt; Restart</b> ), or when you reset it (see <a href="#">Section 2.3 on page 41</a> ).
Poll Interval	Enter how often you want the ZyXEL Device to update this screen, and click <b>Set Interval</b> .
Set Interval	Click this to make the ZyXEL Device update the screen based on the amount of time you specified in <b>Poll Interval</b> .
Stop	Click this to make the ZyXEL Device stop updating the screen.

# CHAPTER 6

## WAN

Use these screens to set up the ZyXEL Device on the WAN. You can configure the Internet connection, DNS servers, and how the ZyXEL Device sends routing information using RIP. In addition, you can set up a backup gateway in case the default gateway is not available.

## 6.1 WAN Overview

### 6.1.1 PPPoE Encapsulation

The ZyXEL Device supports PPPoE (Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet). PPPoE is an IETF standard (RFC 2516) specifying how a personal computer (PC) interacts with a broadband modem (DSL, cable, wireless, etc.) connection. The **PPP over Ethernet** option is for a dial-up connection using PPPoE.

For the service provider, PPPoE offers an access and authentication method that works with existing access control systems (for example Radius).

One of the benefits of PPPoE is the ability to let you access one of multiple network services, a function known as dynamic service selection. This enables the service provider to easily create and offer new IP services for individuals.

Operationally, PPPoE saves significant effort for both you and the ISP or carrier, as it requires no specific configuration of the broadband modem at the customer site.

By implementing PPPoE directly on the ZyXEL Device (rather than individual computers), the computers on the LAN do not need PPPoE software installed, since the ZyXEL Device does that part of the task. Furthermore, with NAT, all of the LANs' computers will have access.

### 6.1.2 WAN IP Address Assignment

Every computer on the Internet must have a unique IP address. If your networks are isolated from the Internet, for instance, only between your two branch offices, you can assign any IP addresses to the hosts without problems. However, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) has reserved the following three blocks of IP addresses specifically for private networks.

**Table 29** Private IP Address Ranges

10.0.0.0	-	10.255.255.255
----------	---	----------------

**Table 29** Private IP Address Ranges

172.16.0.0	-	172.31.255.255
192.168.0.0	-	192.168.255.255

You can obtain your IP address from the IANA, from an ISP or have it assigned by a private network. If you belong to a small organization and your Internet access is through an ISP, the ISP can provide you with the Internet addresses for your local networks. On the other hand, if you are part of a much larger organization, you should consult your network administrator for the appropriate IP addresses.

**Note:** Regardless of your particular situation, do not create an arbitrary IP address; always follow the guidelines above. For more information on address assignment, please refer to RFC 1597, Address Allocation for Private Internets and RFC 1466, Guidelines for Management of IP Address Space.

### 6.1.3 MAC Address

Every Ethernet device has a unique MAC (Media Access Control) address. The MAC address is assigned at the factory and consists of six pairs of hexadecimal characters, for example, 00:A0:C5:00:00:02.

The MAC address screen allows users to configure the WAN port's MAC address by either using the factory default or cloning your computer's MAC address. Choose **Factory Default** to select the factory assigned default MAC Address.

Otherwise, click **Spoof this computer's MAC address - IP Address** and enter the IP address of your computer. Once it is successfully configured, the address will be copied to the rom file (ZyNOS configuration file). It will not change unless you change the setting or upload a different ROM file. It is recommended that you clone the MAC address prior to hooking up the WAN Port.

### 6.1.4 RIP Setup

See [Section 7.1.5 on page 95](#).

### 6.1.5 DNS Server Address Assignment

Use DNS (Domain Name System) to map a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa, for instance, the IP address of [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) is 204.217.0.2. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it.

The ZyXEL Device can get the DNS server addresses in the following ways.



- 1 The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, enter them in the **DNS Server** fields in the **SYSTEM General** screen.
- 2 If the ISP did not give you DNS server information, leave the **DNS Server** fields in the **SYSTEM General** screen set to 0.0.0.0 for the ISP to dynamically assign the DNS server IP addresses.

## 6.2 WAN Screens

### 6.2.1 WAN Internet Connection Screen (Ethernet)

Use this screen to set up your Internet connection. This screen depends on the type of Internet connection you have.

Use this screen to set up an Ethernet connection (no Roadrunner service) with the ISP. To access this screen, click **Network > WAN > Internet Connection**.

**Figure 35** Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Ethernet)

The screenshot shows the 'Internet Connection' configuration screen for an Ethernet connection. The 'ISP Parameters for Internet Access' section includes 'Encapsulation' set to 'Ethernet' and 'Service Type' set to 'Standard'. The 'WAN IP Address Assignment' section has 'Get automatically from ISP (Default)' selected, with 'IP Address', 'IP Subnet Mask', and 'Gateway IP Address' all set to '0.0.0.0'. The 'WAN MAC Address' section has 'Spoof WAN MAC Address' unchecked, and the 'Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address' field set to '192.168.1.33'. 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons are at the bottom.

**Note:** Some ISPs, such as Telstra, send UDP heartbeat packets to verify that the customer is still online. In this case, create a **WAN to LAN** firewall rule for those packets. Contact your ISP to find the correct port number.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 30** Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Ethernet)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ISP Parameters for Internet Access	
Encapsulation	Select <b>Ethernet</b> .
Service Type	Select <b>Standard</b> .
WAN IP Address Assignment	
Get automatically from ISP	Select this if your ISP did not assign you a static IP address.
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this if your ISP assigned you a static IP address.
IP Address	Enter the IP address provided by your ISP.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask provided by your ISP.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the gateway provided by your ISP. If your ISP did not provide one, leave it blank.
WAN MAC Address	
Spoof WAN MAC Address	Select this if you do not want to use the default MAC address for the ZyXEL Device.
Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	This field is enabled if you select <b>Spoof WAN MAC Address</b> . Enter the IP address of the computer whose MAC address you want the ZyXEL Device to use instead of the default MAC address.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 6.2.2 WAN Internet Connection Screen (Roadrunner)

Use this screen to set up an Ethernet connection using Roadrunner service with the ISP. To access this screen, click **Network > WAN > Internet Connection**.

**Figure 36** Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Roadrunner)

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 31** Network > WAN > Internet Connection (Roadrunner)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ISP Parameters for Internet Access	
Encapsulation	Select <b>Ethernet</b> .
Service Type	Select the Roadrunner service provided by your ISP.
User Name	Enter the user name provided by your ISP.
Password	Enter the password provided by your ISP.
Retype to Confirm	Retype your password to make sure you entered it correctly.
Login Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the login server provided by your ISP.
WAN MAC Address	
Spoof WAN MAC Address	Select this if you do not want to use the default MAC address for the ZyXEL Device.
Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	This field is enabled if you select <b>Spoof WAN MAC Address</b> . Enter the IP address of the computer whose MAC address you want the ZyXEL Device to use instead of the default MAC address.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 6.2.3 WAN Internet Connection Screen (PPPoE)

Use this screen to set up a PPPoE connection with the ISP. To access this screen, click **Network > WAN > Internet Connection**.

**Figure 37** Network > WAN > Internet Connection (PPPoE)

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 32** Network > WAN > Internet Connection (PPPoE)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ISP Parameters for Internet Access	
Encapsulation	Select <b>PPP over Ethernet</b> .
Service Name	Enter the PPP service name provided by your ISP. If your ISP did not provide a service name, leave this field blank.
User Name	Enter the user name provided by your ISP.
Password	Enter the password provided by your ISP.
Retype to Confirm	Retype your password to make sure you entered it correctly.
Nailed-Up Connection	Select this if you do not want the ZyXEL Device to time out when the connection is idle for too long.
Idle Timeout	This field is enabled if you do not select <b>Nailed-Up Connection</b> . Enter the number of seconds that the connection should be idle before the ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects. Enter zero if you do not want the ZyXEL Device to automatically disconnect. (This is the same as selecting <b>Nailed-Up Connection</b> .)
WAN IP Address Assignment	

**Table 32** Network > WAN > Internet Connection (PPPoE)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Get automatically from ISP	Select this if your ISP did not assign you a static IP address.
Use Fixed IP Address	Select this if your ISP assigned you a static IP address.
My WAN IP Address	Enter the IP address provided by your ISP.
Remote IP Address	Enter the IP address your ISP provided for the remote (peer) server.
Remote IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask your ISP provided for the remote server.
Metric	Usually, you should keep the default value. This field is related to RIP. See <a href="#">Chapter 7 on page 93</a> for more information. The metric represents the "cost of transmission". A router determines the best route for transmission by choosing a path with the lowest "cost". The smaller the metric, the lower the "cost". RIP uses hop count as the measurement of cost, where 1 is for a directly-connected network. The metric must be 1-15; if you use a value higher than 15, the routers assume the link is down.
Private	Usually, you should keep the default value. This field is related to RIP. See <a href="#">Chapter 7 on page 93</a> for more information. This field determines whether or not the ZyXEL Device includes the route to this remote node in its RIP broadcasts. If you select <b>Yes</b> , this route is not included in RIP broadcast. If you select <b>No</b> , the route to this remote node is propagated to other hosts through RIP broadcasts.
WAN MAC Address	
Spoof WAN MAC Address	Select this if you do not want to use the default MAC address for the ZyXEL Device.
Clone the computer's MAC address - IP Address	This field is enabled if you select <b>Spoof WAN MAC Address</b> . Enter the IP address of the computer whose MAC address you want the ZyXEL Device to use instead of the default MAC address.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 6.2.4 WAN Advanced Screen

Use this screen to set up DNS servers, RIP, and Windows Networking policies for the WAN. To access this screen, click **Network > WAN > Advanced**.

**Figure 38** Network > WAN > Advanced

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 33** Network > WAN > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DNS Servers	DNS (Domain Name System) manages the relationships between domain names and IP addresses. Without a DNS server, you must know the IP address of the computer you want to access before you access it.
First DNS Server Second DNS Server Third DNS Server	Select <b>From ISP</b> if your ISP dynamically assigns DNS server information. (In this case, the ISP assigns the WAN IP address too. See <b>Network &gt; WAN &gt; Internet Connection</b> .) The field to the right is read-only, and it displays the IP address provided by your ISP.  Select <b>User-Defined</b> if you have the IP address of a DNS server. You might get it from your ISP or from your network. Enter the IP address in the field to the right.  Select <b>None</b> if you do not want to use this DNS server. If you select <b>None</b> for all of the DNS servers, you must use IP addresses to configure the ZyXEL Device and to access the Internet.
RIP & Multicast Setup	
RIP Direction	Use this field to control how much routing information the ZyXEL Device sends and receives on the subnet.  <b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device does not send or receive routing information on the subnet.  <b>Both</b> - The ZyXEL Device sends and receives routing information on the subnet.  <b>In Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only receives routing information on the subnet.  <b>Out Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only sends routing information on the subnet.
RIP Version	Select which version of RIP the ZyXEL Device uses when it sends or receives information on the subnet.  <b>RIP-1</b> - The ZyXEL Device uses RIPv1 to exchange routing information.  <b>RIP-2B</b> - The ZyXEL Device broadcasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information.  <b>RIP-2M</b> - The ZyXEL Device multicasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information.

**Table 33** Network > WAN > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast	<p>Select which version of IGMP the ZyXEL Device uses to support multicasting on the WAN. Multicasting sends packets to some computers on the WAN and is an alternative to unicasting (sending packets to one computer) and broadcasting (sending packets to every computer).</p> <p><b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device does not support multicasting.</p> <p><b>IGMP-v1</b> - The ZyXEL Device supports IGMP version 1.</p> <p><b>IGMP-v2</b> - The ZyXEL Device supports IGMP version 2.</p> <p>Multicasting can improve overall network performance. However, it requires extra processing and generates more network traffic. In addition, other computers on the WAN have to support the same version of IGMP.</p>
Windows Networking	NetBIOS over TCP/IP
Allow between LAN and WAN	<p>Select this check box if you want the ZyXEL Device to send NetBIOS (Network Basic Input/Output System) packets between the LAN and WAN. You should also make sure that NetBIOS packets are not blocked in <b>Security &gt; Firewall &gt; Services</b>.</p> <p>NetBIOS packets are TCP or UDP packets that enable a computer to connect to and communicate with computers on other networks. It may sometimes be necessary to allow NetBIOS packets to pass through the ZyXEL Device in order to allow computers on the LAN to find computers on the WAN and vice versa.</p> <p>This is the same setting you can set in <b>Network &gt; LAN &gt; Advanced</b>.</p>
Allow Trigger Dial	Select this if you want to allow NetBIOS packets to initiate calls.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 6.2.5 WAN Traffic Redirect Screen

Use this screen to specify a backup gateway in case the default gateway (your ISP) is not available. To access this screen, click **Network > WAN > Traffic Redirect**.

**Figure 39** Network > WAN > Traffic Redirect

The screenshot shows the 'Traffic Redirect' configuration page. It features a navigation bar with three tabs: 'Internet Connection', 'Advanced', and 'Traffic Redirect'. The 'Traffic Redirect' tab is selected. Below the navigation bar, the page title 'Traffic Redirect' is displayed. The configuration area includes a checked checkbox for 'Active'. Below this are several input fields: 'Backup Gateway IP Address' (0.0.0.0), 'Check WAN IP Address' (0.0.0.0), 'Fail Tolerance' (2), 'Period (sec)' (5), and 'Timeout (sec)' (3). At the bottom of the configuration area, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 34** Network > WAN > Traffic Redirect

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to set up a backup gateway in case the default gateway is not available. (For example, this might happen if the Internet connection goes down.) Clear this if you do not have a backup gateway.
Backup Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the backup gateway. The ZyXEL Device automatically uses this gateway if the default gateway is not available anymore.
Check WAN IP Address	Enter the IP address of a reliable nearby computer the ZyXEL Device uses to test whether or not the default gateway is available anymore. For example, use one of your ISP's DNS server addresses. If you enter 0.0.0.0, the test fails each time.
Fail Tolerance	Enter the number of consecutive times the ZyXEL Device may attempt and fail to find the reliable nearby computer at <b>Check WAN IP Address</b> before it starts using the backup gateway. 2 - 5 are typical choices.
Period (sec)	Enter the number of seconds between attempts to find the reliable nearby computer at <b>Check WAN IP Address</b> . 5 - 60 are typical choices.
Timeout (sec)	Enter the number of seconds the ZyXEL Device waits for a response from the reliable nearby computer at <b>Check WAN IP Address</b> before the attempt is a failure. 3 - 50 are typical choices, but this number should be less than the <b>Period</b> .
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 7

## LAN

Use these screens to set up the ZyXEL Device on the LAN. You can configure its IP address and subnet mask, DHCP services, and other subnets. You can also control how the ZyXEL Device sends routing information using RIP, and you can enable and disable Any IP.

### 7.1 LAN Overview

A Local Area Network (LAN) is a shared communication system to which many computers are attached. A LAN is usually a computer network limited to the immediate area, such as the same building or floor of a building.

#### 7.1.1 IP Address and Subnet Mask

Similar to the way houses on a street share a common street name, so too do computers on a LAN share one common network number.

Where you obtain your network number depends on your particular situation. If the ISP or your network administrator assigns you a block of registered IP addresses, follow their instructions in selecting the IP addresses and the subnet mask.

If the ISP did not explicitly give you an IP network number, then most likely you have a single user account and the ISP will assign you a dynamic IP address when the connection is established. If this is the case, it is recommended that you select a network number from 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.0 and you must enable the Network Address Translation (NAT) feature of the ZyXEL Device. The Internet Assigned Number Authority (IANA) reserved this block of addresses specifically for private use; please do not use any other number unless you are told otherwise. Let's say you select 192.168.1.0 as the network number; which covers 254 individual addresses, from 192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.254 (zero and 255 are reserved). In other words, the first three numbers specify the network number while the last number identifies an individual computer on that network.

Once you have decided on the network number, pick an IP address that is easy to remember, for instance, 192.168.1.1, for your ZyXEL Device, but make sure that no other device on your network is using that IP address.

The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. Your ZyXEL Device will compute the subnet mask automatically based on the IP address that you entered. You don't need to change the subnet mask computed by the ZyXEL Device unless you are instructed to do otherwise.

## 7.1.2 DHCP Setup

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual clients to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the ZyXEL Device as a DHCP server or disable it. When configured as a server, the ZyXEL Device provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If DHCP service is disabled, you must have another DHCP server on your LAN, or else each computer must be manually configured.

The ZyXEL Device is pre-configured with a pool of IP addresses for the DHCP clients (DHCP Pool). See the product specifications in the appendices. Do not assign static IP addresses from the DHCP pool to your LAN computers.

These parameters should work for the majority of installations. If your ISP gives you explicit DNS server address(es), read the embedded web configurator help regarding what fields need to be configured.

## 7.1.3 LAN TCP/IP

The ZyXEL Device has built-in DHCP server capability that assigns IP addresses and DNS servers to systems that support DHCP client capability.

The LAN parameters of the ZyXEL Device are preset in the factory with the following values:

- IP address of 192.168.1.1 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
- DHCP server enabled with 32 client IP addresses starting from 192.168.1.33.

These parameters should work for the majority of installations. If your ISP gives you explicit DNS server address(es), read the embedded web configurator help regarding what fields need to be configured.

## 7.1.4 DNS Server Address

DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a machine before you can access it. The DNS server addresses that you enter in the DHCP setup are passed to the client machines along with the assigned IP address and subnet mask.

There are two ways that an ISP disseminates the DNS server addresses. The first is for an ISP to tell a customer the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when s/he signs up. If your ISP gives you the DNS server addresses, enter them in the **DNS Server** fields in **DHCP Setup**, otherwise, leave them blank.

Some ISPs choose to pass the DNS servers using the DNS server extensions of PPP IPCP (IP Control Protocol) after the connection is up. If your ISP did not give you explicit DNS servers, chances are the DNS servers are conveyed through IPCP negotiation. The ZyXEL Device supports the IPCP DNS server extensions through the DNS proxy feature.

If the **Primary** and **Secondary DNS Server** fields in the **LAN Setup** screen are not specified, for instance, left as 0.0.0.0, the ZyXEL Device tells the DHCP clients that it itself is the DNS server. When a computer sends a DNS query to the ZyXEL Device, the ZyXEL Device forwards the query to the real DNS server learned through IPCP and relays the response back to the computer.

Please note that DNS proxy works only when the ISP uses the IPCP DNS server extensions. It does not mean you can leave the DNS servers out of the DHCP setup under all circumstances. If your ISP gives you explicit DNS servers, make sure that you enter their IP addresses in the **LAN Setup** screen. This way, the ZyXEL Device can pass the DNS servers to the computers and the computers can query the DNS server directly without the ZyXEL Device's intervention.

### 7.1.5 RIP Setup

RIP (Routing Information Protocol) allows a router to exchange routing information with other routers. The **RIP Direction** field controls the sending and receiving of RIP packets. When set to:

- **Both** - the ZyXEL Device will broadcast its routing table periodically and incorporate the RIP information that it receives.
- **In Only** - the ZyXEL Device will not send any RIP packets but will accept all RIP packets received.
- **Out Only** - the ZyXEL Device will send out RIP packets but will not accept any RIP packets received.
- **None** - the ZyXEL Device will not send any RIP packets and will ignore any RIP packets received.

The **Version** field controls the format and the broadcasting method of the RIP packets that the ZyXEL Device sends (it recognizes both formats when receiving). **RIP-1** is universally supported; but RIP-2 carries more information. RIP-1 is probably adequate for most networks, unless you have an unusual network topology.

Both **RIP-2B** and **RIP-2M** sends the routing data in RIP-2 format; the difference being that **RIP-2B** uses subnet broadcasting while **RIP-2M** uses multicasting.

### 7.1.6 Multicast

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender - 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender - everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to a group of hosts on the network - not everybody and not just 1.

IGMP (Internet Group Multicast Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a Multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. IGMP version 2 (RFC 2236) is an improvement over version 1 (RFC 1112) but IGMP version 1 is still in wide use. If you would like to read more detailed information about interoperability between IGMP version 2 and version 1, please see sections 4 and 5 of RFC 2236. The class D IP address is used to identify host groups and can be in the range 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. The address

224.0.0.0 is not assigned to any group and is used by IP multicast computers. The address 224.0.0.1 is used for query messages and is assigned to the permanent group of all IP hosts (including gateways). All hosts must join the 224.0.0.1 group in order to participate in IGMP. The address 224.0.0.2 is assigned to the multicast routers group.

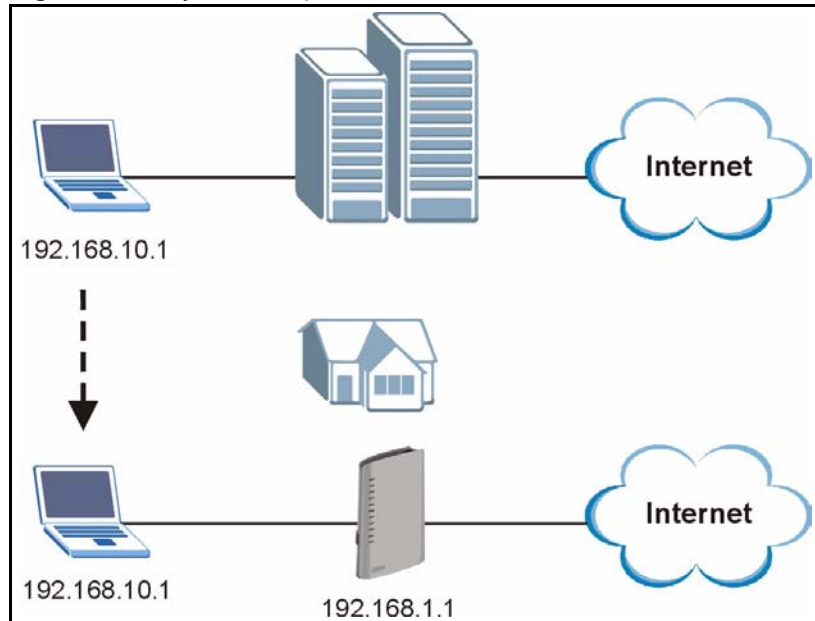
The ZyXEL Device supports both IGMP version 1 (**IGMP-v1**) and IGMP version 2 (**IGMP-v2**). At start up, the ZyXEL Device queries all directly connected networks to gather group membership. After that, the ZyXEL Device periodically updates this information. IP multicasting can be enabled/disabled on the ZyXEL Device LAN and/or WAN interfaces in the web configurator (**LAN**; **WAN**). Select **None** to disable IP multicasting on these interfaces.

### 7.1.7 Any IP

Traditionally, you must set the IP addresses and the subnet masks of a computer and the ZyXEL Device to be in the same subnet to allow the computer to access the Internet (through the ZyXEL Device). In cases where your computer is required to use a static IP address in another network, you may need to manually configure the network settings of the computer every time you want to access the Internet via the ZyXEL Device.

With the Any IP feature and NAT enabled, the ZyXEL Device allows a computer to access the Internet without changing the network settings (such as IP address and subnet mask) of the computer, when the IP addresses of the computer and the ZyXEL Device are not in the same subnet. Whether a computer is set to use a dynamic or static (fixed) IP address, you can simply connect the computer to the ZyXEL Device and access the Internet.

The following figure depicts a scenario where a computer is set to use a static private IP address in the corporate environment. In a residential house where a ZyXEL Device is installed, you can still use the computer to access the Internet without changing the network settings, even when the IP addresses of the computer and the ZyXEL Device are not in the same subnet.

**Figure 40** Any IP Example

The Any IP feature does not apply to a computer using either a dynamic IP address or a static IP address that is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device's IP address.

**Note:** You *must* enable NAT to use the Any IP feature on the ZyXEL Device.

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network. IP routing table is defined on IP Ethernet devices (the ZyXEL Device) to decide which hop to use, to help forward data along to its specified destination.

The following lists out the steps taken, when a computer tries to access the Internet for the first time through the ZyXEL Device.

- 1** When a computer (which is in a different subnet) first attempts to access the Internet, it sends packets to its default gateway (which is not the ZyXEL Device) by looking at the MAC address in its ARP table.
- 2** When the computer cannot locate the default gateway, an ARP request is broadcast on the LAN.
- 3** The ZyXEL Device receives the ARP request and replies to the computer with its own MAC address.
- 4** The computer updates the MAC address for the default gateway to the ARP table. Once the ARP table is updated, the computer is able to access the Internet through the ZyXEL Device.
- 5** When the ZyXEL Device receives packets from the computer, it creates an entry in the IP routing table so it can properly forward packets intended for the computer.

After all the routing information is updated, the computer can access the ZyXEL Device and the Internet as if it is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device.

## 7.2 LAN Screens

### 7.2.1 LAN IP Screen

Use this screen to set up the ZyXEL Device's IP address and subnet mask. To access this screen, click **Network > LAN > IP**.

**Figure 41** Network > LAN > IP

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 35** Network > LAN > IP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the ZyXEL Device on the LAN.  <b>Note:</b> This field is the IP address you use to access the ZyXEL Device on the LAN. If the web configurator is running on a computer on the LAN, you lose access to the web configurator as soon as you change this field and click <b>Apply</b> . You can access the web configurator again by typing the new IP address in the browser.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the LAN.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 7.2.2 LAN DHCP Setup Screen

Use this screen to enable, disable, and configure the DHCP server in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Network > LAN > DHCP Setup**.

**Figure 42** Network > LAN > DHCP Setup

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 36** Network > LAN > DHCP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DHCP Setup	
Enable DHCP Server	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to be the DHCP server on the LAN. As a DHCP server, the ZyXEL Device assigns IP addresses to DHCP clients on the LAN and provides the subnet mask and DNS server information.
IP Pool Starting Address	Enter the IP address from which the ZyXEL Device begins allocating IP addresses, if you have not specified an IP address for this computer in <b>Network &gt; LAN &gt; Static DHCP</b> .
Pool Size	Enter the number of IP addresses to allocate. This number must be at least one and is limited by a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 (regardless of the subnet the ZyXEL Device is in). For example, if the <b>IP Pool Start Address</b> is 10.10.10.10, the ZyXEL Device can allocate up to 10.10.10.254, or 245 IP addresses.
DNS Server	
First DNS Server Second DNS Server Third DNS Server	Specify the IP addresses of a maximum of three DNS servers that the network can use. The ZyXEL Device provides these IP addresses to DHCP clients. You can specify these IP addresses two ways. <b>Custom Defined</b> - enter a static IP address <b>From ISP</b> - provide the DNS servers provided by the ISP on the WAN port
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 7.2.3 LAN Static DHCP Screen

**Note:** This screen has no effect if the DHCP server is not enabled. You can enable it in **Network > LAN > DHCP Setup**.

Use this screen to make the ZyXEL Device assign a specific IP address to a specific computer on the LAN. To access this screen, click **Network > LAN > Static DHCP**.

**Figure 43** Network > LAN > Static DHCP

#	MAC Address	IP Address
1	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>
5	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>
6	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>
7	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>
8	<input type="text"/>	0.0.0.0 <input type="text"/>

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 37** Network > LAN > Static DHCP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field is a sequential value. It is not associated with a specific entry.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address of the computer to which you want the ZyXEL Device to assign the same IP address.
IP Address	Enter the IP address you want the ZyXEL Device to assign to the computer.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 7.2.4 LAN Client List Screen

**Note:** This screen is empty if the DHCP server is not enabled. You can enable it in **Network > LAN > DHCP Setup**.

Use this screen to look at the IP addresses the ZyXEL Device has assigned to DHCP clients on the LAN. To access this screen, click **Network > LAN > Client List**.



**Figure 44** Network > LAN > Client List

#	IP Address	Host Name	MAC Address	Reserve
1	192.168.1.33	tw11477-02	00:50:8d:48:59:1f	<input type="checkbox"/>

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 38** Network > LAN > Client List

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field is a sequential value. It is not associated with a specific entry.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address the ZyXEL Device assigned to the computer.
Host Name	This field displays the system name of the computer to which the ZyXEL Device assigned the IP address.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address of the computer to which the ZyXEL Device assigned the IP address.
Reserve	Select this if you always want to assign this IP address to this MAC address. Then, click <b>Apply</b> . The ZyXEL Device creates an entry in the <b>LAN Static DHCP</b> screen. See <a href="#">Section 7.2.2 on page 98</a> .
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Refresh	Click this to update the information in this screen.

## 7.2.5 LAN IP Alias Screen

Use this screen to add subnets on the LAN port. You can also control what routing information is sent and received by each subnet. To access this screen, click **Network > LAN > IP Alias**.

**Figure 45** Network > LAN > IP Alias

The screenshot shows the 'IP Alias' configuration page. It features two sections, 'IP Alias 1' and 'IP Alias 2'. Each section includes a checkbox to enable the alias, and fields for 'IP Address' and 'IP Subnet Mask' (both currently set to 0.0.0.0). There are also dropdown menus for 'RIP Direction' (set to 'None') and 'RIP Version' (set to 'RIP-1'). At the bottom of the page, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 39** Network > LAN > IP Alias

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Alias 1	
IP Alias 1	Select this to add the specified subnet to the LAN port.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the ZyXEL Device on the subnet.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the subnet.
RIP Direction	Use this field to control how much routing information the ZyXEL Device sends and receives on the subnet. <b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device does not send or receive routing information on the subnet. <b>Both</b> - The ZyXEL Device sends and receives routing information on the subnet. <b>In Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only receives routing information on the subnet. <b>Out Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only sends routing information on the subnet.
RIP Version	Select which version of RIP the ZyXEL Device uses when it sends or receives information on the subnet. <b>RIP-1</b> - The ZyXEL Device uses RIPv1 to exchange routing information. <b>RIP-2B</b> - The ZyXEL Device broadcasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information. <b>RIP-2M</b> - The ZyXEL Device multicasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information.
IP Alias 2	
IP Alias 2	Select this to add the specified subnet to the LAN port.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of the ZyXEL Device on the subnet.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask of the subnet.

**Table 39** Network > LAN > IP Alias

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RIP Direction	Use this field to control how much routing information the ZyXEL Device sends and receives on the subnet. <b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device does not send or receive routing information on the subnet. <b>Both</b> - The ZyXEL Device sends and receives routing information on the subnet. <b>In Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only receives routing information on the subnet. <b>Out Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only sends routing information on the subnet.
RIP Version	Select which version of RIP the ZyXEL Device uses when it sends or receives information on the subnet. <b>RIP-1</b> - The ZyXEL Device uses RIPv1 to exchange routing information. <b>RIP-2B</b> - The ZyXEL Device broadcasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information. <b>RIP-2M</b> - The ZyXEL Device multicasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 7.2.6 LAN Advanced Screen

Use this screen to add subnets on the LAN port. You can also control what routing information is sent and received by each subnet. To access this screen, click **Network > LAN > Advanced**.

**Figure 46** Network > LAN > Advanced

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 40** Network > LAN > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
RIP & Multicast Setup	
RIP Direction	Use this field to control how much routing information the ZyXEL Device sends and receives on the subnet. <b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device does not send or receive routing information on the subnet. <b>Both</b> - The ZyXEL Device sends and receives routing information on the subnet. <b>In Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only receives routing information on the subnet. <b>Out Only</b> - The ZyXEL Device only sends routing information on the subnet.
RIP Version	Select which version of RIP the ZyXEL Device uses when it sends or receives information on the subnet. <b>RIP-1</b> - The ZyXEL Device uses RIPv1 to exchange routing information. <b>RIP-2B</b> - The ZyXEL Device broadcasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information. <b>RIP-2M</b> - The ZyXEL Device multicasts RIPv2 to exchange routing information.
Multicast	You do not have to enable multicasting to use <b>RIP-2M</b> . (See <b>RIP Version</b> .) Select which version of IGMP the ZyXEL Device uses to support multicasting on the LAN. Multicasting sends packets to some computers on the LAN and is an alternative to unicasting (sending packets to one computer) and broadcasting (sending packets to every computer). <b>None</b> - The ZyXEL Device does not support multicasting. <b>IGMP-v1</b> - The ZyXEL Device supports IGMP version 1. <b>IGMP-v2</b> - The ZyXEL Device supports IGMP version 2. Multicasting can improve overall network performance. However, it requires extra processing and generates more network traffic. In addition, other computers on the LAN have to support the same version of IGMP.
Any IP Setup	
Active	Select this if you want to let computers on different subnets use the ZyXEL Device.
Windows Networking	NetBIOS over TCP/IP

**Table 40** Network > LAN > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Allow between LAN and WAN	<p>Select this check box if you want the ZyXEL Device to send NetBIOS (Network Basic Input/Output System) packets between the LAN and WAN. You should also make sure that NetBIOS packets are not blocked in <b>Security &gt; Firewall &gt; Services</b>.</p> <p>NetBIOS packets are TCP or UDP packets that enable a computer to connect to and communicate with computers on other networks. It may sometimes be necessary to allow NetBIOS packets to pass through the ZyXEL Device in order to allow computers on the LAN to find computers on the WAN and vice versa.</p> <p>This is the same setting you can set in <b>Network &gt; WAN &gt; Advanced</b>.</p>
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 8

## NAT

Use these screens to configure port forwarding and trigger ports for the ZyXEL Device. You can also enable and disable SIP, FTP, and H.323 ALG. See [Appendix E on page 259](#) for more background information about NAT.

### 8.1 NAT Overview

#### 8.1.1 Port Forwarding: Services and Port Numbers

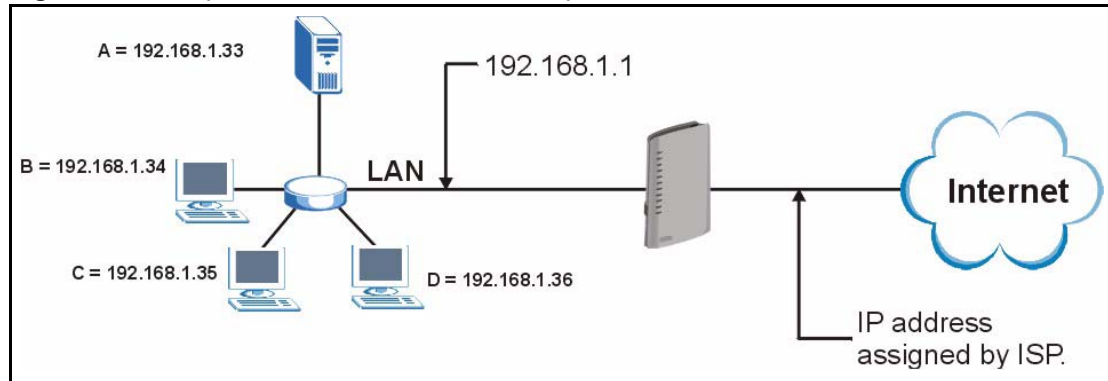
A NAT server set is a list of inside (behind NAT on the LAN) servers, for example, web or FTP, that you can make accessible to the outside world even though NAT makes your whole inside network appear as a single machine to the outside world.

Use the [NAT Port Forwarding Screen](#) to forward incoming service requests to the server(s) on your local network. You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server. The port number identifies a service; for example, web service is on port 80 and FTP on port 21. In some cases, such as for unknown services or where one server can support more than one service (for example both FTP and web service), it might be better to specify a range of port numbers.

In addition to the servers for specified services, NAT supports a default server. A service request that does not have a server explicitly designated for it is forwarded to the default server. If the default is not defined, the service request is simply discarded.

See [Appendix G on page 285](#) for examples of services.

For example., let's say you want to assign ports 21-25 to one FTP, Telnet and SMTP server (A in the example), port 80 to another (B in the example) and assign a default server IP address of 192.168.1.35 to a third (C in the example). You assign the LAN IP addresses and the ISP assigns the WAN IP address. The NAT network appears as a single host on the Internet.

**Figure 47** Multiple Servers Behind NAT Example

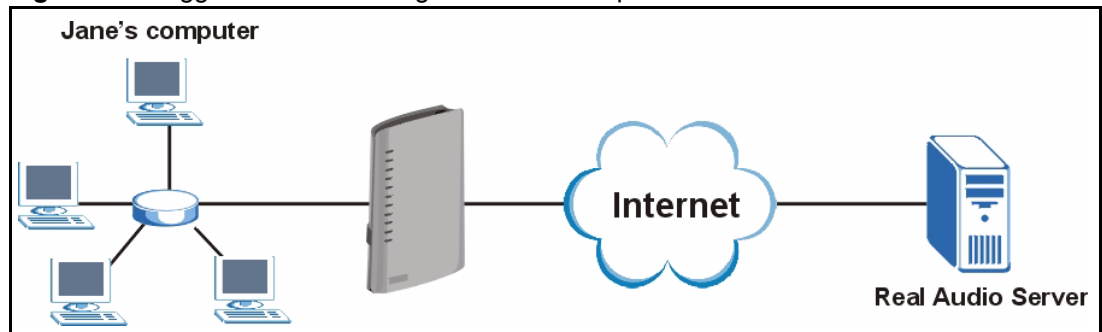
## 8.1.2 Trigger Port Forwarding

Some services use a dedicated range of ports on the client side and a dedicated range of ports on the server side. With regular port forwarding you set a forwarding port in NAT to forward a service (coming in from the server on the WAN) to the IP address of a computer on the client side (LAN). The problem is that port forwarding only forwards a service to a single LAN IP address. In order to use the same service on a different LAN computer, you have to manually replace the LAN computer's IP address in the forwarding port with another LAN computer's IP address,

Trigger port forwarding solves this problem by allowing computers on the LAN to dynamically take turns using the service. The ZyXEL Device records the IP address of a LAN computer that sends traffic to the WAN to request a service with a specific port number and protocol (a "trigger" port). When the ZyXEL Device's WAN port receives a response with a specific port number and protocol ("incoming" port), the ZyXEL Device forwards the traffic to the LAN IP address of the computer that sent the request. After that computer's connection for that service closes, another computer on the LAN can use the service in the same manner. This way you do not need to configure a new IP address each time you want a different LAN computer to use the application.

### 8.1.2.1 Trigger Port Forwarding Example

The following is an example of trigger port forwarding.

**Figure 48** Trigger Port Forwarding Process: Example



- 1 Jane requests a file from the Real Audio server (port 7070).
- 2 Port 7070 is a “trigger” port and causes the ZyXEL Device to record Jane’s computer IP address. The ZyXEL Device associates Jane's computer IP address with the "incoming" port range of 6970-7170.
- 3 The Real Audio server responds using a port number ranging between 6970-7170.
- 4 The ZyXEL Device forwards the traffic to Jane’s computer IP address.
- 5 Only Jane can connect to the Real Audio server until the connection is closed or times out. The ZyXEL Device times out in three minutes with UDP (User Datagram Protocol), or two hours with TCP/IP (Transfer Control Protocol/Internet Protocol).

### 8.1.2.2 Two Points To Remember About Trigger Ports

- 1 Trigger events only happen on data that is going coming from inside the ZyXEL Device and going to the outside.
- 2 If an application needs a continuous data stream, that port (range) will be tied up so that another computer on the LAN can't trigger it.

### 8.1.3 SIP ALG

Some NAT routers may include a SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG). A SIP ALG allows SIP calls to pass through NAT by examining and translating IP addresses embedded in the data stream. When the ZyXEL Device registers with the SIP register server, the SIP ALG translates the ZyXEL Device’s private IP address inside the SIP data stream to a public IP address. You do not need to use STUN or an outbound proxy (see [Chapter 9 on page 115](#)) if your ZyXEL Device is behind a SIP ALG.

## 8.2 NAT Screens

### 8.2.1 NAT General Screen

Use this screen to enable and disable NAT and to allocate memory for NAT and firewall rules. To access this screen, click **Network > NAT > General**.

**Figure 49** Network > NAT > General

The screenshot shows the 'NAT Setup' configuration page. At the top, there are four tabs: 'General' (selected), 'Port Forwarding', 'Trigger Port', and 'ALG'. Below the tabs, the 'NAT Setup' section contains a checked checkbox for 'Enable Network Address Translation'. Below this, there is a text label 'Max NAT/Firewall Session Per User' followed by a text input field containing the number '2048'. At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 41** Network > NAT > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
NAT Setup	
Enable Network Address Translation	Select this if you want to use port forwarding, trigger ports, or any of the ALG. The more features you enable, the more memory you should allocate in <b>Max NAT/Firewall Session Per User</b> .
Max NAT/Firewall Session Per User	Select the maximum number of NAT rules and firewall rules the ZyXEL Device enforces at one time. The ZyXEL Device automatically allocates memory for the maximum number of rules, regardless of whether or not there is a rule to enforce. This is the same number you enter in <b>Security &gt; Firewall &gt; General</b> .
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 8.2.2 NAT Port Forwarding Screen

Use this screen to look at the current port-forwarding rules in the ZyXEL Device, and to enable, disable, activate, and deactivate each one. You can also set up a default server to handle ports not covered by rules. To access this screen, click **Network > NAT > Port Forwarding**.

**Figure 50** Network > NAT > Port Forwarding

General **Port Forwarding** Trigger Port ALG

Default Server Setup

Default Server

Port Forwarding

#	Active	Name	Start Port	End Port	Server IP Address	Modify
1			0	0		
2			0	0		
3			0	0		
4			0	0		
5			0	0		
6			0	0		
7			0	0		
8			0	0		
9			0	0		
10			0	0		
11			0	0		

Apply Reset

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 42** Network > NAT > Port Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Server Setup	
Default Server	Enter the IP address of the server to which the ZyXEL Device should forward packets for ports that are not specified in the <b>Port Forwarding</b> section below or in the <b>Management &gt; Remote MGMT</b> screens. Enter 0.0.0.0 if you want the ZyXEL Device to discard these packets instead.
Port Forwarding	
#	This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific rule. The sequence is important, however. The ZyXEL Device checks each rule in order, and it only follows the first one that applies.
Active	Select this to enable this rule. Clear this to disable this rule.
Name	This field displays the name of the rule. It does not have to be unique.
Start Port	This field displays the beginning of the range of port numbers forwarded by this rule.
End Port	This field displays the end of the range of port numbers forwarded by this rule. If it is the same as the <b>Start Port</b> , only one port number is forwarded.
Server IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the server to which packet for the selected port(s) are forwarded.
Modify	This column provides icons to edit and delete rules. To edit a rule, click the <b>Edit</b> icon next to the rule. The <b>NAT Port Forwarding Edit</b> screen appears. To delete a rule, click the <b>Remove</b> icon next to the rule. All the information in the rule returns to the default settings.

**Table 42** Network > NAT > Port Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 8.2.3 NAT Port Forwarding Edit Screen

Use this screen to activate, deactivate, and edit each port-forwarding rule in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click an **Edit** icon in **Network > NAT > Port Forwarding**.

**Figure 51** Network > NAT > Port Forwarding > Edit

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 43** Network > NAT > Port Forwarding > Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable this rule. Clear this to disable this rule.
Service Name	Enter a name to identify this rule. You can use 1 - 31 printable ASCII characters, or you can leave this field blank. It does not have to be a unique name.
Start Port End Port	Enter the port number or range of port numbers you want to forward to the specified server. To forward one port number, enter the port number in the <b>Start Port</b> and <b>End Port</b> fields. To forward a range of ports, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>enter the port number at the beginning of the range in the <b>Start Port</b> field</li> <li>enter the port number at the end of the range in the <b>End Port</b> field.</li> </ul>
Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of the server to which to forward packets for the selected port number(s). This server is usually on the LAN.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 8.2.4 NAT Trigger Port Screen

Use this screen to maintain port-triggering rules in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Network > NAT > Trigger Port**.

**Figure 52** Network > NAT > Trigger Port

#	Name	Incoming		Trigger	
		Start Port	End Port	Start Port	End Port
1		0	0	0	0
2		0	0	0	0
3		0	0	0	0
4		0	0	0	0
5		0	0	0	0
6		0	0	0	0
7		0	0	0	0
8		0	0	0	0
9		0	0	0	0
10		0	0	0	0
11		0	0	0	0
12		0	0	0	0

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 44** Network > NAT > Trigger Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Name	Enter a name to identify this rule. You can use 1 - 15 printable ASCII characters, or you can leave this field blank. It does not have to be a unique name.
Incoming	
Start Port End Port	<p>Enter the incoming port number or range of port numbers you want to forward to the IP address the ZyXEL Device records.</p> <p>To forward one port number, enter the port number in the <b>Start Port</b> and <b>End Port</b> fields.</p> <p>To forward a range of ports,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>enter the port number at the beginning of the range in the <b>Start Port</b> field</li> <li>enter the port number at the end of the range in the <b>End Port</b> field.</li> </ul> <p>If you want to delete this rule, enter zero in the <b>Start Port</b> and <b>End Port</b> fields.</p>
Trigger	
Start Port End Port	<p>Enter the outgoing port number or range of port numbers that makes the ZyXEL Device record the source IP address and assign it to the selected incoming port number(s).</p> <p>To select one port number, enter the port number in the <b>Start Port</b> and <b>End Port</b> fields.</p> <p>To select a range of ports,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>enter the port number at the beginning of the range in the <b>Start Port</b> field</li> <li>enter the port number at the end of the range in the <b>End Port</b> field.</li> </ul> <p>If you want to delete this rule, enter zero in the <b>Start Port</b> and <b>End Port</b> fields.</p>

**Table 44** Network > NAT > Trigger Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to delete every port-triggering rule.

## 8.2.5 NAT ALG Screen

Use this screen to enable and disable SIP (VoIP), FTP (file transfer), and H.323 (audio-visual) ALG in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Network > NAT > ALG**.

**Figure 53** Network > NAT > ALG

The screenshot shows the 'ALG Setup' configuration page. At the top, there are tabs for 'General', 'Port Forwarding', 'Trigger Port', and 'ALG'. The 'ALG' tab is selected. Under the 'ALG Setup' heading, there are three checked checkboxes: 'Enable SIP ALG', 'Enable FTP ALG', and 'Enable H.323 ALG'. At the bottom of the page, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 45** Network > NAT > ALG

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable SIP ALG	Select this to make sure SIP (VoIP) works correctly with port-forwarding and port-triggering rules.
Enable FTP ALG	Select this to make sure FTP (file transfer) works correctly with port-forwarding and port-triggering rules.
Enable H.323 ALG	Select this to make sure H.323 (audio-visual programs, such as NetMeeting) works correctly with port-forwarding and port-triggering rules.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

# CHAPTER 9

## SIP

Use these screens to set up your SIP accounts and to configure QoS settings.

### 9.1 SIP Overview

#### 9.1.1 Introduction to VoIP

VoIP (Voice over IP) is the sending of voice signals over the Internet Protocol. This allows you to make phone calls and send faxes over the Internet at a fraction of the cost of using the traditional circuit-switched telephone network. You can also use servers to run telephone service applications like PBX services and voice mail. VoIP Service Provider companies provide VoIP service; these companies are sometimes also known as Internet Telephony Service Providers. A company could alternatively set up an IP-PBX and provide its own VoIP service.

Circuit-switched telephone networks require 64 kilobits per second (kbps) in each direction to handle a telephone call. VoIP can use advanced voice coding techniques with compression to reduce the required bandwidth.

#### 9.1.2 Introduction to SIP

The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an application-layer control (signaling) protocol that handles the setting up, altering and tearing down of voice and multimedia sessions over the Internet.

SIP signaling is separate from the media for which it handles sessions. The media that is exchanged during the session can use a different path from that of the signaling. SIP handles telephone calls and can interface with traditional circuit-switched telephone networks.

#### 9.1.3 SIP Identities

A SIP account uses an identity (sometimes referred to as a SIP address). A complete SIP identity is called a SIP URI (Uniform Resource Identifier). A SIP account's URI identifies the SIP account in a way similar to the way an e-mail address identifies an e-mail account. The format of a SIP identity is SIP-Number@SIP-Service-Domain.

### 9.1.3.1 SIP Number

The SIP number is the part of the SIP URI that comes before the “@” symbol. A SIP number can use letters like in an e-mail address (johndoe@VoIP-provider.com for example) or numbers like a telephone number (1122334455@VoIP-provider.com for example).

### 9.1.3.2 SIP Service Domain

The SIP service domain of the VoIP service provider (the company that lets you make phone calls over the Internet) is the domain name in a SIP URI. For example, if the SIP address is [1122334455@VoIP-provider.com](mailto:1122334455@VoIP-provider.com), then “VoIP-provider.com” is the SIP service domain.

### 9.1.4 SIP Call Progression

The following figure displays the basic steps in the setup and tear down of a SIP call. A calls B.

**Table 46** SIP Call Progression

A		B
1. INVITE		
		2. Ringing
		3. OK
4. ACK		
	5. Dialogue (voice traffic)	
6. BYE		
		7. OK

- 1 A sends a SIP INVITE request to B. This message is an invitation for B to participate in a SIP telephone call.
- 2 B sends a response indicating that the telephone is ringing.
- 3 B sends an OK response after the call is answered.
- 4 A then sends an ACK message to acknowledge that B has answered the call.
- 5 Now A and B exchange voice media (talk).
- 6 After talking, A hangs up and sends a BYE request.
- 7 B replies with an OK response confirming receipt of the BYE request and the call is terminated.

### 9.1.5 SIP Client Server

SIP is a client-server protocol. A SIP client is an application program or device that sends SIP requests. A SIP server responds to the SIP requests.

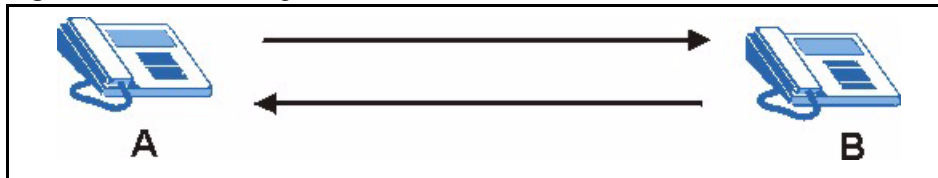


When you use SIP to make a VoIP call, it originates at a client and terminates at a server. A SIP client could be a computer or a SIP phone. One device can act as both a SIP client and a SIP server.

### 9.1.5.1 SIP User Agent

A SIP user agent can make and receive VoIP telephone calls. This means that SIP can be used for peer-to-peer communications even though it is a client-server protocol. In the following figure, either A or B can act as a SIP user agent client to initiate a call. A and B can also both act as a SIP user agent to receive the call.

**Figure 54** SIP User Agent



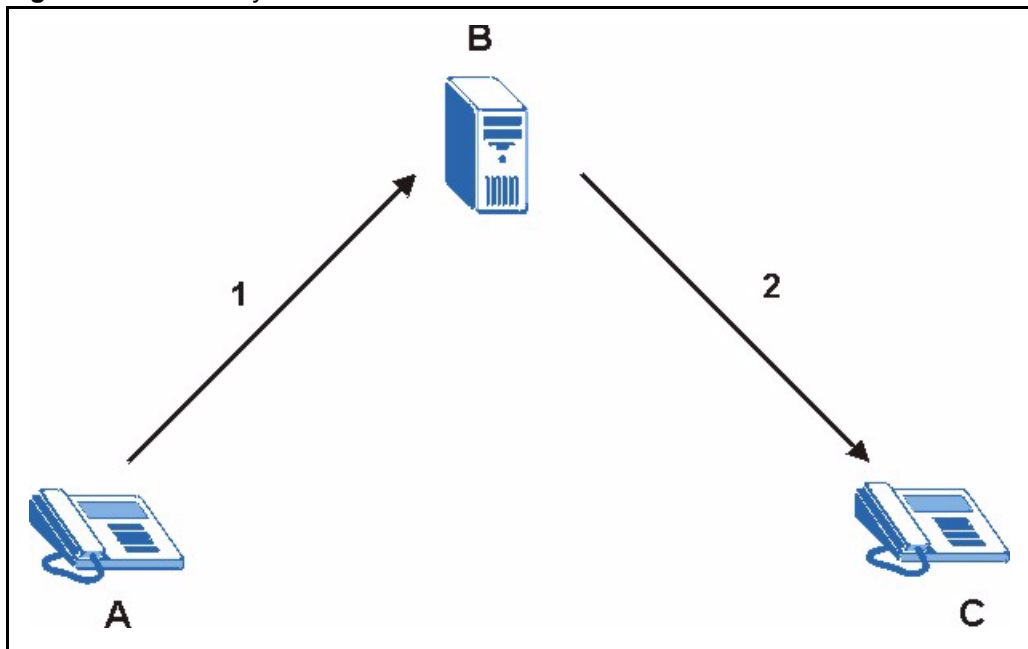
### 9.1.5.2 SIP Proxy Server

A SIP proxy server receives requests from clients and forwards them to another server.

In the following example, you want to use client device A to call someone who is using client device C.

- 1 The client device (A in the figure) sends a call invitation to the SIP proxy server (B).
- 2 The SIP proxy server forwards the call invitation to C.

**Figure 55** SIP Proxy Server



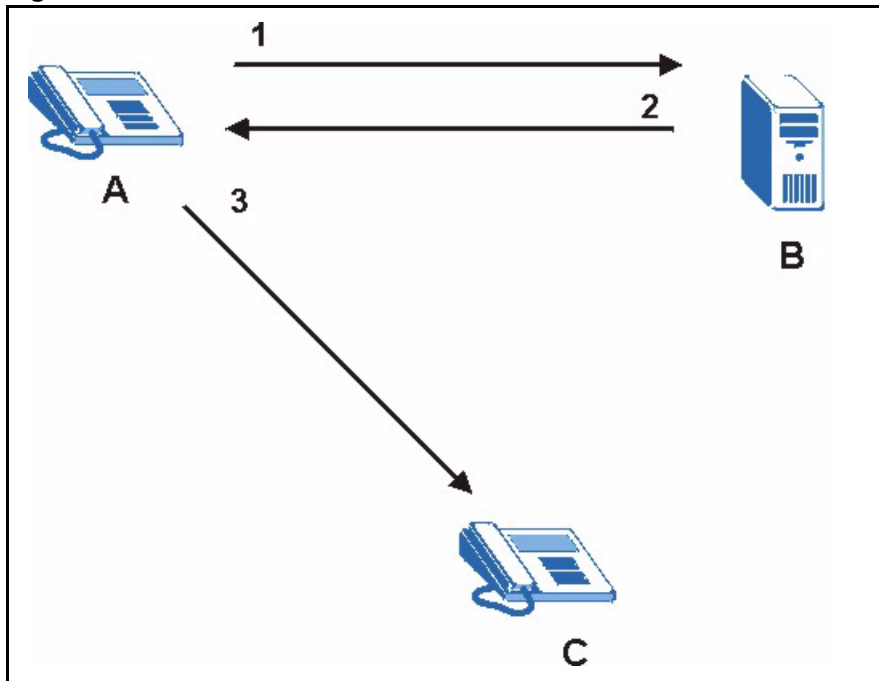
### 9.1.5.3 SIP Redirect Server

A SIP redirect server accepts SIP requests, translates the destination address to an IP address and sends the translated IP address back to the device that sent the request. Then the client device that originally sent the request can send requests to the IP address that it received back from the redirect server. Redirect servers do not initiate SIP requests.

In the following example, you want to use client device A to call someone who is using client device C.

- 1 Client device A sends a call invitation for C to the SIP redirect server (B).
- 2 The SIP redirect server sends the invitation back to A with C's IP address (or domain name).
- 3 Client device A then sends the call invitation to client device C.

**Figure 56** SIP Redirect Server



### 9.1.5.4 SIP Register Server

A SIP register server maintains a database of SIP identity-to-IP address (or domain name) mapping. The register server checks your user name and password when you register.

### 9.1.6 RTP

When you make a VoIP call using SIP, the RTP (Real time Transport Protocol) is used to handle voice data transfer. See RFC 1889 for details on RTP.

## 9.1.7 NAT and SIP

The ZyXEL Device must register its public IP address with a SIP register server. If there is a NAT router between the ZyXEL Device and the SIP register server, the ZyXEL Device probably has a private IP address. The ZyXEL Device lists its IP address in the SIP message that it sends to the SIP register server. NAT does not translate this IP address in the SIP message. The SIP register server gets the ZyXEL Device's IP address from inside the SIP message and maps it to your SIP identity. If the ZyXEL Device has a private IP address listed in the SIP message, the SIP server cannot map it to your SIP identity. See [Chapter 8 on page 107](#) for more information about NAT.

Use a SIP ALG (Application Layer Gateway), Use NAT, STUN, or outbound proxy to allow the ZyXEL Device to list its public IP address in the SIP messages.

### 9.1.7.1 SIP ALG

See [Section 8.1.3 on page 109](#).

### 9.1.7.2 Use NAT

If you know the NAT router's public IP address and SIP port number, you can use the Use NAT feature to manually configure the ZyXEL Device to use a them in the SIP messages. This eliminates the need for STUN or a SIP ALG.

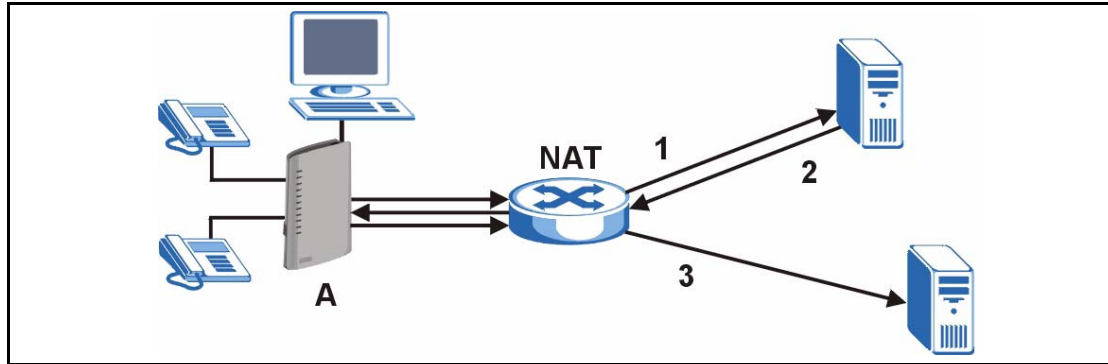
You must also configure the NAT router to forward traffic with this port number to the ZyXEL Device.

### 9.1.7.3 STUN

STUN (Simple Traversal of User Datagram Protocol (UDP) through Network Address Translators) allows the ZyXEL Device to find the presence and types of NAT routers and/or firewalls between it and the public Internet. STUN also allows the ZyXEL Device to find the public IP address that NAT assigned, so the ZyXEL Device can embed it in the SIP data stream. STUN does not work with symmetric NAT routers or firewalls. See RFC 3489 for details on STUN.

The following figure shows how STUN works.

- 1 The ZyXEL Device (A) sends SIP packets to the STUN server (B).
- 2 The STUN server (B) finds the public IP address and port number that the NAT router used on the ZyXEL Device's SIP packets and sends them to the ZyXEL Device.
- 3 The ZyXEL Device uses the public IP address and port number in the SIP packets that it sends to the SIP server (C).

**Figure 57** STUN

#### 9.1.7.4 Outbound Proxy

Your VoIP service provider may host a SIP outbound proxy server to handle all of the ZyXEL Device's VoIP traffic. This allows the ZyXEL Device to work with any type of NAT router and eliminates the need for STUN or a SIP ALG. Turn off a SIP ALG on a NAT router in front of the ZyXEL Device to keep it from retranslating the IP address (since this is already handled by the outbound proxy server).

#### 9.1.8 Voice Coding

A codec (coder/decoder) codes analog voice signals into digital signals and decodes the digital signals back into voice signals. The ZyXEL Device supports the following codecs.

- **G.711** is a Pulse Code Modulation (PCM) waveform codec. PCM measures analog signal amplitudes at regular time intervals and converts them into bits. G.711 provides very good sound quality but requires 64kbps of bandwidth.
- **G.729** is an Analysis-by-Synthesis (AbS) hybrid waveform codec that uses a filter based on information about how the human vocal tract produces sounds. G.729 provides good sound quality and reduces the required bandwidth to 8kbps.

#### 9.1.9 PSTN Call Setup Signaling

PSTNs (Public Switched Telephone Networks) use DTMF or pulse dialing to set up telephone calls.

Dual-Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) signaling uses pairs of frequencies (one lower frequency and one higher frequency) to set up calls. It is also known as Touch Tone®. Each of the keys on a DTMF telephone corresponds to a different pair of frequencies.

Pulse dialing sends a series of clicks to the local phone office in order to dial numbers.<sup>1</sup>

1. The ZyXEL Device supports DTMF at the time of writing.

## 9.1.10 MWI (Message Waiting Indication)

Enable Message Waiting Indication (MWI) enables your phone to give you a message-waiting (beeping) dial tone when you have one or more voice messages. Your VoIP service provider must have a messaging system that sends message-waiting-status SIP packets as defined in RFC 3842.

## 9.1.11 Quality of Service (QoS)

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay and the networking methods used to provide bandwidth for real-time multimedia applications.

### 9.1.11.1 Type of Service (ToS)

Network traffic can be classified by setting the ToS (Type Of Service) values at the data source (for example, at the ZyXEL Device) so a server can decide the best method of delivery, that is the least cost, fastest route and so on.

### 9.1.11.2 DiffServ

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.<sup>1</sup>

### 9.1.11.3 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

**Figure 58** DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field

DSCP (6-bit)	Unused (2-bit)
-----------------	-------------------

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

1. The ZyXEL Device does not support DiffServ at the time of writing.

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

#### 9.1.11.4 VLAN

Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Only stations within the same group can communicate with each other.

Your ZyXEL Device can add IEEE 802.1Q VLAN ID tags to voice frames that it sends to the network. This allows the ZyXEL Device to communicate with a SIP server that is a member of the same VLAN group. Some ISPs use the VLAN tag to identify voice traffic and give it priority over other traffic.

## 9.2 SIP Screens

### 9.2.1 SIP Settings Screen

Use this screen to maintain basic information about each SIP account. Your VoIP service provider (the company that lets you make phone calls over the Internet) should provide this. You can also enable and disable each SIP account. To access this screen, click **VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings**.

**Figure 59** VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 47** VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Account	Select the SIP account you want to see in this screen. If you change this field, the screen automatically refreshes.
SIP Settings	
Active SIP Account	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to use this account. Clear it if you do not want the ZyXEL Device to use this account.
Number	Enter your SIP number. In the full SIP URI, this is the part before the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII characters.
SIP Local Port	Enter the ZyXEL Device's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
SIP Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP server provided by your VoIP service provider. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters. It does not matter whether the SIP server is a proxy, redirect or register server.
SIP Server Port	Enter the SIP server's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
REGISTER Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP register server, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, enter the same address you entered in the <b>SIP Server Address</b> field. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters.
REGISTER Server Port	Enter the SIP register server's listening port number, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, enter the same port number you entered in the <b>SIP Server Port</b> field.
SIP Service Domain	Enter the SIP service domain name. In the full SIP URI, this is the part after the @ symbol. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII Extended set characters.

**Table 47** VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
Send Caller ID	Select this if you want to send identification when you make VoIP phone calls. Clear this if you do not want to send identification.
Authentication	
User Name	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII characters.
Password	Enter the user name for registering this SIP account, exactly as it was given to you. You can use up to 95 printable ASCII Extended set characters.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.
Advanced Setup	Click this to edit the advanced settings for this SIP account. The <b>Advanced SIP Setup</b> screen appears.

## 9.2.2 Advanced SIP Setup Screen

Use this screen to maintain advanced settings for each SIP account. To access this screen, click **Advanced Setup** in **VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings**.



**Figure 60** VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings > Advanced

SIP Account : SIP1

**SIP Server Settings**

URL Type

Expiration Duration  (20-65535) sec

Register Re-send timer  (1-65535) sec

Session Expires  (30-3600) sec

Min-SE  (20-1800) sec

**RTP Port Range**

Start Port  (1025-65535)

End Port  (1025-65535)

**Voice Compression**

Primary Compression Type

Secondary Compression Type

Third Compression Type

DTMF Mode

**STUN**

Active

Server Address

Server Port  (1024-65535)

**Use NAT**

Active

Server Address

Server Port  (1024-65535)

**Outbound Proxy**

Active

Server Address

Server Port  (1024-65535)

**NAT Keep Alive**

Active

Keep Alive With SIP Proxy  Keep Alive With Outbound Proxy

Keep Alive Interval  (30-65535) sec

**MWI (Message Waiting Indication)**

Enable

Expiration Time  (1-65535) sec

**Fax Option**

G.711 Fax Passthrough  T.38 Fax Relay

**Call Forward**

Call Forward Table

**Caller Ringing**

Enable

**On Hold**

Enable

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 48** VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP Account	This field displays the SIP account you see in this screen.
SIP Server Settings	
URL Type	Select whether or not to include the SIP service domain name when the ZyXEL Device sends the SIP number. <b>SIP</b> - include the SIP service domain name <b>TEL</b> - do not include the SIP service domain name
Expiration Duration	Enter the number of seconds your SIP account is registered with the SIP register server before it is deleted. The ZyXEL Device automatically tries to re-register your SIP account when one-half of this time has passed. (The SIP register server might have a different expiration.)
Register Re-send timer	Enter the number of seconds the ZyXEL Device waits before it tries again to register the SIP account, if the first try failed or if there is no response.
Session Expires	Enter the number of seconds the conversation can last before the call is automatically disconnected. Usually, when one-half of this time has passed, the ZyXEL Device or the other party updates this timer to prevent this from happening.
Min-SE	Enter the minimum number of seconds the ZyXEL Device accepts for a session expiration time when it receives a request to start a SIP session. If the request has a shorter time, the ZyXEL Device rejects it.
RTP Port Range	
Start Port End Port	Enter the listening port number(s) for RTP traffic, if your VoIP service provider gave you this information. Otherwise, keep the default values. To enter one port number, enter the port number in the <b>Start Port</b> and <b>End Port</b> fields. To enter a range of ports, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• enter the port number at the beginning of the range in the <b>Start Port</b> field</li> <li>• enter the port number at the end of the range in the <b>End Port</b> field.</li> </ul>
Voice Compression	Select the type of voice coder/decoder (codec) that you want the ZyXEL Device to use. G.711 provides higher voice quality but requires more bandwidth (64 kbps). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>G.711A</b> is typically used in Europe.</li> <li>• <b>G.711u</b> is typically used in North America and Japan.</li> </ul> In contrast, <b>G.729</b> only requires 8 kbps. The ZyXEL Device must use the same codec as the peer. When two SIP devices start a SIP session, they must agree on a codec.
Primary Compression Type	Select the ZyXEL Device's first choice for voice coder/decoder.
Secondary Compression Type	Select the ZyXEL Device's second choice for voice coder/decoder. Select <b>None</b> if you only want the ZyXEL Device to accept the first choice.
Third Compression Type	This field is disabled if <b>Secondary Compression Type</b> is <b>None</b> . Select the ZyXEL Device's third choice for voice coder/decoder. Select <b>None</b> if you only want the ZyXEL Device to accept the first or second choice.

**Table 48** VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
DTMF Mode	<p>Control how the ZyXEL Device handles the tones that your telephone makes when you push its buttons. You should use the same mode your VoIP service provider uses.</p> <p><b>RFC 2833</b> - send the DTMF tones in RTP packets</p> <p><b>PCM</b> - send the DTMF tones in the voice data stream. This method works best when you are using a codec that does not use compression (like G.711). Codecs that use compression (like G.729) can distort the tones.</p> <p><b>SIP INFO</b> - send the DTMF tones in SIP messages</p>
STUN	
Active	<p>Select this if all of the following conditions are satisfied.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is a NAT router between the ZyXEL Device and the SIP server.</li> <li>• The NAT router is not a SIP ALG.</li> <li>• Your VoIP service provider gave you an IP address or domain name for a STUN server.</li> </ul> <p>Otherwise, clear this field.</p>
Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the STUN server provided by your VoIP service provider.
Server Port	Enter the STUN server's listening port, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
Use NAT	
Active	<p>Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to send SIP traffic to a specific NAT router. You must also configure the NAT router to forward traffic with the specified port to the ZyXEL Device. This eliminates the need for STUN or a SIP ALG.</p>
Server Address	Enter the public IP address or domain name of the NAT router.
Server Port	Enter the port number that your SIP sessions use with the public IP address of the NAT router.
Outbound Proxy	
Active	<p>Select this if your VoIP service provider has a SIP outbound server to handle voice calls. This allows the ZyXEL Device to work with any type of NAT router and eliminates the need for STUN or a SIP ALG. Turn off any SIP ALG on a NAT router in front of the ZyXEL Device to keep it from retranslating the IP address (since this is already handled by the outbound proxy server).</p>
Server Address	Enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP outbound proxy server.
Server Port	Enter the SIP outbound proxy server's listening port, if your VoIP service provider gave you one. Otherwise, keep the default value.
NAT Keep Alive	
Active	<p>Select this to stop NAT routers between the ZyXEL Device and SIP server (a SIP proxy server or outbound proxy server) from dropping the SIP session. The ZyXEL Device does this by sending SIP notify messages to the SIP server based on the specified interval.</p>
Keep Alive with SIP Proxy	Select this if the SIP server is a SIP proxy server.
Keep Alive with Outbound Proxy	Select this if the SIP server is an outbound proxy server. You must enable <b>Outbound Proxy</b> to use this.
Keep Alive Interval	Enter how often (in seconds) the ZyXEL Device should send SIP notify messages to the SIP server.

**Table 48** VoIP > SIP > SIP Settings > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MWI (Message Waiting Indication)	
Enable	Select this if you want to hear a waiting (beeping) dial tone on your phone when you have at least one voice message. Your VoIP service provider must support this feature.
Expiration Time	Keep the default value, unless your VoIP service provider tells you to change it. Enter the number of seconds the SIP server should provide the message waiting service each time the ZyXEL Device subscribes to the service. Before this time passes, the ZyXEL Device automatically subscribes again.
Fax Option	This field controls how the ZyXEL Device handles fax messages.
G.711 Fax Passthrough	Select this if the ZyXEL Device should use G.711 to send fax messages. The peer devices must also use G.711.
T.38 Fax Relay	Select this if the ZyXEL Device should send fax messages as UDP or TCP/IP packets through IP networks. This provides better quality, but it may have interoperability problems. The peer devices must also use T.38.
Call Forward	
Call Forward Table	Select which call forwarding table you want the ZyXEL Device to use for incoming calls. You set up these tables in <b>VoIP &gt; Phone Book &gt; Incoming Call Policy</b> .
Caller Ringing	
Enable	Check this box if you want people to hear a tone when they call you. The ZyXEL Device provides a tone for you.
On Hold	
Enable	Check this box if you want people to hear a tone when you put them on hold. The ZyXEL Device provides a default tone for you.
<Back	Click this to return to the <b>SIP Settings</b> screen without saving your changes.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 9.2.3 SIP QoS Screen

Use this screen to maintain ToS and VLAN settings for the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **VoIP > SIP > QoS**.

**Figure 61** VoIP > SIP > QoS

The screenshot shows the 'SIP Settings' configuration page with the 'QoS' tab selected. The 'TOS' section contains two input fields: 'SIP TOS Priority Setting' and 'RTP TOS Priority Setting', both with the value '5'. The 'VLAN Tagging' section has an unchecked checkbox for 'Voice VLAN ID' and an input field with the value '0'. At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 49** VoIP > SIP > QoS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SIP TOS Priority Setting	Enter the priority for SIP voice transmissions. The ZyXEL Device creates Type of Service priority tags with this priority to voice traffic that it transmits.
RTP TOS Priority Setting	Enter the priority for RTP voice transmissions. The ZyXEL Device creates Type of Service priority tags with this priority to RTP traffic that it transmits.
Voice VLAN ID	Select this if the ZyXEL Device has to be a member of a VLAN to communicate with the SIP server. Ask your network administrator, if you are not sure. Enter the VLAN ID provided by your network administrator in the field on the right. Your LAN and gateway must be configured to use VLAN tags. Otherwise, clear this field.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 10

## Phone

Use these screens to configure the phones you use to make phone calls.

### 10.1 Phone Overview

You can configure the volume, echo cancellation and VAD settings for each individual phone port on the ZyXEL Device. You can also select which SIP account to use for making outgoing calls.

#### 10.1.1 Voice Activity Detection/Silence Suppression/Comfort Noise

Voice Activity Detection (VAD) detects whether or not speech is present. This lets the ZyXEL Device reduce the bandwidth that a call uses by not transmitting “silent packets” when you are not speaking.

When using VAD, the ZyXEL Device generates comfort noise when the other party is not speaking. The comfort noise lets you know that the line is still connected as total silence could easily be mistaken for a lost connection.

#### 10.1.2 Echo Cancellation

G.168 is an ITU-T standard for eliminating the echo caused by the sound of your voice reverberating in the telephone receiver while you talk.

#### 10.1.3 Supplementary Phone Services Overview

Supplementary services such as call hold, call waiting, call transfer, ... are generally available from your VoIP service provider. The ZyXEL Device supports the following services:

- Call Hold
- Call Waiting
- Making a Second Call
- Call Transfer
- Call Forwarding
- Three-Way Conference
- Internal Calls

**Note:** To take full advantage of the supplementary phone services available through the ZyXEL Device's phone ports, you may need to subscribe to the services from your VoIP service provider.

### 10.1.3.1 The Flash Key

Flashing means to press the hook for a short period of time (a few hundred milliseconds) before releasing it. On newer telephones, there should be a "flash" key (button) that generates the signal electronically. If the flash key is not available, you can tap (press and immediately release) the hook by hand to achieve the same effect. However, using the flash key is preferred since the timing is much more precise. The ZyXEL Device may interpret manual tapping as hanging up if the duration is too long.

You can invoke all the supplementary services by using the flash key.

### 10.1.3.2 Europe Type Supplementary Phone Services

This section describes how to use supplementary phone services with the **Europe Type Call Service Mode**. Commands for supplementary services are listed in the table below.

After pressing the flash key, if you do not issue the sub-command before the default sub-command timeout (2 seconds) expires or issue an invalid sub-command, the current operation will be aborted.

**Table 50** European Type Flash Key Commands

COMMAND	SUB-COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Flash		Put a current call on hold to place a second call. Switch back to the call (if there is no second call).
Flash	0	Drop the call presently on hold or reject an incoming call which is waiting for answer.
Flash	1	Disconnect the current phone connection and answer the incoming call or resume with caller presently on hold.
Flash	2	1. Switch back and forth between two calls. 2. Put a current call on hold to answer an incoming call. 3. Separate the current three-way conference call into two individual calls (one is on-line, the other is on hold).
Flash	3	Create three-way conference connection.
Flash	*98#	Transfer the call to another phone.

#### 10.1.3.2.1 European Call Hold

Call hold allows you to put a call (A) on hold by pressing the flash key.

If you have another call, press the flash key and then "2" to switch back and forth between caller A and B by putting either one on hold.



Press the flash key and then “0” to disconnect the call presently on hold and keep the current call on line.

Press the flash key and then “1” to disconnect the current call and resume the call on hold.

If you hang up the phone but a caller is still on hold, there will be a remind ring.

#### **10.1.3.2.2 *European Call Waiting***

This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone (directory) number.

If there is a second call to a telephone number, you will hear a call waiting tone. Take one of the following actions.

- Reject the second call.  
Press the flash key and then press “0”.
- Disconnect the first call and answer the second call.  
Either press the flash key and press “1”, or just hang up the phone and then answer the phone after it rings.
- Put the first call on hold and answer the second call.  
Press the flash key and then “2”.

#### **10.1.3.2.3 *European Call Transfer***

Do the following to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.

- 1** Press the flash key to put the caller on hold.
- 2** When you hear the dial tone, dial “\*98#” followed by the number to which you want to transfer the call. to operate the Intercom.
- 3** After you hear the ring signal or the second party answers it, hang up the phone.

#### **10.1.3.2.4 *European Three-Way Conference***

Use the following steps to make three-way conference calls.

- 1** When you are on the phone talking to someone, place the flash key to put the caller on hold and get a dial tone.
- 2** Dial a phone number directly to make another call.
- 3** When the second call is answered, press the flash key and press “3” to create a three-way conversation.
- 4** Hang up the phone to drop the connection.
- 5** If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections (one is on-line, the other is on hold), press the flash key and press “2”.

### 10.1.3.3 USA Type Supplementary Services

This section describes how to use supplementary phone services with the **USA Type Call Service Mode**. Commands for supplementary services are listed in the table below.

After pressing the flash key, if you do not issue the sub-command before the default sub-command timeout (2 seconds) expires or issue an invalid sub-command, the current operation will be aborted.

**Table 51** USA Type Flash Key Commands

COMMAND	SUB-COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Flash		Put a current call on hold to place a second call. After the second call is successful, press the flash key again to have a three-way conference call. Put a current call on hold to answer an incoming call.
Flash	*98#	Transfer the call to another phone.

#### 10.1.3.3.1 USA Call Hold

Call hold allows you to put a call (**A**) on hold by pressing the flash key.

If you have another call, press the flash key to switch back and forth between caller **A** and **B** by putting either one on hold.

If you hang up the phone but a caller is still on hold, there will be a remind ring.

#### 10.1.3.3.2 USA Call Waiting

This allows you to place a call on hold while you answer another incoming call on the same telephone (directory) number.

If there is a second call to your telephone number, you will hear a call waiting tone.

Press the flash key to put the first call on hold and answer the second call.

#### 10.1.3.3.3 USA Call Transfer

Do the following to transfer an incoming call (that you have answered) to another phone.

- 1 Press the flash key to put the caller on hold.
- 2 When you hear the dial tone, dial “\*98#” followed by the number to which you want to transfer the call. to operate the Intercom.
- 3 After you hear the ring signal or the second party answers it, hang up the phone.

#### 10.1.3.3.4 USA Three-Way Conference

Use the following steps to make three-way conference calls.

- 1 When you are on the phone talking to someone, place the flash key to put the caller on hold and get a dial tone.
- 2 Dial a phone number directly to make another call.
- 3 When the second call is answered, press the flash key, wait for the sub-command tone and press “3” to create a three-way conversation.
- 4 Hang up the phone to drop the connection.
- 5 If you want to separate the activated three-way conference into two individual connections (one is on-line, the other is on hold), press the flash key, wait for the sub-command tone and press “2”.

## 10.2 Phone Screens

### 10.2.1 Analog Phone Screen

Use this screen to control which SIP accounts and PSTN line (for the P-2302RL-P1) each phone uses. To access this screen, click **VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone**.

**Figure 62** VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 52** VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Phone Port Settings	Select the phone port you want to see in this screen. If you change this field, the screen automatically refreshes.
Outgoing Call Use	
SIP1	Select this if you want this phone port to use the SIP1 account when it makes calls. If you select both SIP accounts, the ZyXEL Device tries to use SIP2 first.
SIP2	Select this if you want this phone port to use the SIP2 account when it makes calls. If you select both SIP accounts, the ZyXEL Device tries to use SIP2 first.

**Table 52** VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Incoming Call apply to	
SIP1	Select this if you want to receive phone calls for the SIP1 account on this phone port. If you select more than one source for incoming calls, there is no way to distinguish between them when you receive phone calls.
SIP2	Select this if you want to receive phone calls for the SIP2 account on this phone port. If you select more than one source for incoming calls, there is no way to distinguish between them when you receive phone calls.
PSTN Line	<p>This field is only available in the P-2302RL-P1.</p> <p>Select this if you want to receive phone calls from the PSTN line (that do not use the Internet) on this phone port. If you select more than one source for incoming calls, there is no way to distinguish between them when you receive phone calls.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If the P-2302RL-P1 is turned off, you can only use the phone that is connected to the <b>PHONE1</b> port to make phone calls, regardless of the settings in this screen. Make sure you know which phone this is, in case you want to make an emergency call.</p>
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.
Advanced Setup	Click this to edit the advanced settings for this phone port. The <b>Advanced Analog Phone Setup</b> screen appears.

## 10.2.2 Advanced Analog Phone Setup Screen

Use this screen to edit advanced settings for each phone port. To access this screen, click **Advanced Setup** in **VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone**.

**Figure 63** VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone > Advanced

Analog Phone 1

**Voice Volume Control**

Speaking Volume

Listening Volume

**Echo Cancellation**

G.168 Active

**Dialing Interval Select**

Dialing Interval Select

VAD Support

<Back Apply Reset

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 53** VoIP > Phone > Analog Phone > Advanced

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Analog Phone	This field displays the phone port you see in this screen.
Voice Volume Control	
Speaking Volume	Enter the loudness that the ZyXEL Device uses for speech that it sends to the peer device. -1 is the quietest, and 1 is the loudest.
Listening Volume	Enter the loudness that the ZyXEL Device uses for speech that it receives from the peer device. -1 is the quietest, and 1 is the loudest.
Echo Cancellation	
G.168 Active	Select this if you want to eliminate the echo caused by the sound of your voice reverberating in the telephone receiver while you talk.
Dialing Interval Select	
Dialing Interval Select	Enter the number of seconds the ZyXEL Device should wait after you stop dialing numbers before it makes the phone call. The value depends on how quickly you dial phone numbers. If you select <b>Active Immediate Dial</b> in <b>VoIP &gt; Phone &gt; Common</b> , you can press the pound key (#) to tell the ZyXEL Device to make the phone call immediately, regardless of this setting.
VAD Support	Select this if the ZyXEL Device should stop transmitting when you are not speaking. This reduces the bandwidth the ZyXEL Device uses.
<Back	Click this to return to the <b>Analog Phone</b> screen without saving your changes.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 10.2.3 Common Phone Settings Screen

Use this screen to activate and deactivate immediate dialing. To access this screen, click **VoIP > Phone > Common**.

**Figure 64** VoIP > Phone > Common

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 54** VoIP > Phone > Common

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active Immediate Dial	Select this if you want to use the pound key (#) to tell the ZyXEL Device to make the phone call immediately, instead of waiting the number of seconds you selected in the <b>Dialing Interval Select</b> in <b>VoIP &gt; Phone &gt; Analog Phone</b> . If you select this, dial the phone number, and then press the pound key. The ZyXEL Device makes the call immediately, instead of waiting. You can still wait, if you want.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 10.2.4 Phone Region Screen

Use this screen to maintain settings that often depend on which region of the world the ZyXEL Device is in. To access this screen, click **VoIP > Phone > Region**.

**Figure 65** VoIP > Phone > Region

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring a phone's region. It features three tabs: 'Analog Phone', 'Common', and 'Region'. The 'Region' tab is selected. Underneath, there is a 'Region Settings' section containing two dropdown menus. The first, 'Region Settings', is currently set to 'Default'. The second, 'Call Service Mode', is set to 'Europe Type'. Below these settings are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 55** VoIP > Phone > Region

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Region Settings	Select the place in which the ZyXEL Device is located. Do not select <b>Default</b> .
Call Service Mode	Select the mode for supplementary phone services (call hold, call waiting, call transfer and three-way conference calls) that your VoIP service provider supports. <b>Europe Type</b> - use supplementary phone services in European mode <b>USA Type</b> - use supplementary phone services American mode You might have to subscribe to these services to use them. Contact your VoIP service provider.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.





# CHAPTER 11

## Phone Book

Use these screens to maintain call-forwarding rules and speed-dial settings.

### 11.1 Phone Book Overview

Speed dial provides shortcuts for dialing frequently used (VoIP) phone numbers. It is also required if you want to make peer-to-peer calls. In peer-to-peer calls, you call another VoIP device directly without going through a SIP server. In the ZyXEL Device, you must set up a speed dial entry in the phone book in order to do this. Select **Non-Proxy (Use IP or URL)** in the **Type** column and enter the callee's IP address or domain name. The ZyXEL Device sends SIP INVITE requests to the peer VoIP device when you use the speed dial entry.

You do not need to configure a SIP account in order to make a peer-to-peer VoIP call.

### 11.2 Phone Book Screens

#### 11.2.1 Incoming Call Policy Screen

Use this screen to maintain rules for handling incoming calls. You can block, redirect, or accept them. To access this screen, click **VoIP > Phone Book > Incoming Call Policy**.

**Figure 66** VoIP > Phone Book > Incoming Call Policy

You can create two sets of call-forwarding rules. Each one is stored in a call-forwarding table. Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 56** VoIP > Phone Book > Incoming Call Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Table Number	Select the call-forwarding table you want to see in this screen. If you change this field, the screen automatically refreshes.
Forward to Number Setup	The ZyXEL Device checks these rules, in the order in which they appear, after it checks the rules in the <b>Advanced Setup</b> section.
Unconditional Forward to Number	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to forward all incoming calls to the specified phone number, regardless of other rules in the <b>Forward to Number</b> section. Specify the phone number in the field on the right.
Busy Forward to Number	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to forward incoming calls to the specified phone number if the phone port is busy. Specify the phone number in the field on the right. If you have call waiting, the incoming call is forwarded to the specified phone number if you reject or ignore the second incoming call.
No Answer Forward to Number	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to forward incoming calls to the specified phone number if the call is unanswered. (See <b>No Answer Waiting Time</b> .) Specify the phone number in the field on the right.
No Answer Waiting Time	This field is used by the <b>No Answer Forward to Number</b> feature and <b>No Answer</b> conditions below. Enter the number of seconds the ZyXEL Device should wait for you to answer an incoming call before it considers the call is unanswered.

**Table 56** VoIP > Phone Book > Incoming Call Policy

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Advanced Setup	The ZyXEL Device checks these rules before it checks the rules in the <b>Forward to Number</b> section.
#	This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific rule. The sequence is important, however. The ZyXEL Device checks each rule in order, and it only follows the first one that applies.
Activate	Select this to enable this rule. Clear this to disable this rule.
Incoming Call Number	Enter the phone number to which this rule applies.
Forward to Number	Enter the phone number to which you want to forward incoming calls from the <b>Incoming Call Number</b> . You may leave this field blank, depending on the <b>Condition</b> .
Condition	<p>Select the situations in which you want to forward incoming calls from the <b>Incoming Call Number</b>, or select an alternative action.</p> <p><b>Unconditional</b> - The ZyXEL Device immediately forwards any calls from the <b>Incoming Call Number</b> to the <b>Forward to Number</b>.</p> <p><b>Busy</b> - The ZyXEL Device forwards any calls from the <b>Incoming Call Number</b> to the <b>Forward to Number</b> when your SIP account already has a call connected.</p> <p><b>No Answer</b> - The ZyXEL Device forwards any calls from the <b>Incoming Call Number</b> to the <b>Forward to Number</b> when the call is unanswered. (See <b>No Answer Waiting Time</b>.)</p> <p><b>Block</b> - The ZyXEL Device rejects calls from the <b>Incoming Call Number</b>.</p> <p><b>Accept</b> - The ZyXEL Device allows calls from the <b>Incoming Call Number</b>. You might create a rule with this condition if you do not want incoming calls from someone to be forwarded by rules in the <b>Forward to Number</b> section.</p>
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 11.2.2 Speed Dial Screen

You have to create speed-dial entries if you want to make peer-to-peer calls or call SIP numbers that use letters. You can also create speed-dial entries for frequently-used SIP phone numbers. Use this screen to add, edit, or remove speed-dial entries. To access this screen, click **VoIP > Phone Book > Speed Dial**.

**Figure 67** VoIP > Phone Book > Speed Dial

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 57** VoIP > Phone Book > Speed Dial

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Speed Dial	Use this section to create or edit speed-dial entries.
Speed Dial	Select the speed-dial number you want to use for this phone number.
Number	Enter the SIP number you want the ZyXEL Device to call when you dial the speed-dial number.
Name	Enter a name to identify the party you call when you dial the speed-dial number. You can use up to 127 printable ASCII characters.
Type	Select <b>Use Proxy</b> if you want to use one of your SIP accounts to call this phone number. Select <b>Non-Proxy (Use IP or URL)</b> if you want to use a different SIP server or if you want to make a peer-to-peer call. In this case, enter the IP address or domain name of the SIP server or the other party in the field below.
Add	Click this to use the information in the <b>Speed Dial</b> section to update the <b>Speed Dial Phone Book</b> section.
Speed Dial Phone Book	Use this section to look at all the speed-dial entries and to erase them.
Speed Dial	This field displays the speed-dial number you should dial to use this entry. You should dial the numbers the way they appear in the screen.
Number	This field displays the SIP number the ZyXEL Device calls when you dial the speed-dial number.
Name	This field displays the name of the party you call when you dial the speed-dial number.

**Table 57** VoIP > Phone Book > Speed Dial

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Destination	This field is blank, if the speed-dial entry uses one of your SIP accounts. Otherwise, this field shows the IP address or domain name of the SIP server or other party. (This field corresponds with the <b>Type</b> field in the <b>Speed Dial</b> section.)
Modify	Use this field to edit or erase the speed-dial entry. Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to copy the information for this speed-dial entry into the <b>Speed Dial</b> section, where you can change it. Click the <b>Remove</b> icon to erase this speed-dial entry.
Clear	Click this to erase all the speed-dial entries.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 12

## PSTN Line

**Note:** This menu item is only available for the P-2302RL-P1.

Use this screen to set up the PSTN line used to make regular phone calls. These phone calls do not use the Internet.

### 12.1 PSTN Line Overview

With the PSTN line, you can make and receive regular phone calls. Use a prefix number to make a regular call. When the ZyXEL Device P-2302RL-P1 does not have power, you can make regular calls without dialing a prefix number.

**Note:** If the P-2302RL-P1 is turned off, you can only use the phone that is connected to the **PHONE1** port to make phone calls, regardless of the settings in any screen. Make sure you know which phone this is, especially in case you want to make an emergency call.

You can also specify phone numbers that should always use the regular phone service (without having to dial a prefix number). Do this for emergency numbers (like those for contacting police, fire or emergency medical services).

### 12.2 PSTN Line Screen

Use this screen to set up the PSTN line you use to make regular phone calls. To access this screen, click **VoIP > PSTN Line > General**.

**Figure 68** VoIP > PSTN Line > General

The screenshot shows a web-based configuration interface. At the top, there is a tab labeled 'General'. Below it, the section is titled 'Call through PSTN Line'. There is a text input field for 'PSTN Line Pre-fix Number' containing the value '0000'. Below this is a section titled 'Relay to PSTN Line' which contains nine numbered input fields (1 through 9), each currently empty. At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 58** VoIP > PSTN Line > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PSTN Line Pre-fix Number	Enter 1 - 7 telephone keys (0 - 9, #, *) you dial before you dial the phone number, if you want to make a regular phone call while one of your SIP accounts is registered. These numbers tell the ZyXEL Device that you want to make a regular phone call. It is not recommended to use the # key, however, because it is also used in <b>Immediate Dial</b> . (See <b>VoIP &gt; Phone &gt; Common</b> .)
Relay to PSTN Line	Enter phone numbers (for regular calls, not VoIP calls) that you want to dial without the prefix number. For example, you should enter emergency numbers. The number (1 - 9) is not a speed-dial number. It is just a sequential value that is not associated with any phone number.  <b>Note:</b> If the P-2302RL-P1 is turned off, you can only use the phone that is connected to the <b>PHONE1</b> port to make phone calls, regardless of the settings in any screen. Make sure you know which phone this is, especially in case you want to make an emergency call.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 13

## Firewall

Use these screens to enable, configure and disable the firewall that protects your ZyXEL Device and your LAN from unwanted or malicious traffic.

### 13.1 Firewall Overview

Originally, the term *firewall* referred to a construction technique designed to prevent the spread of fire from one room to another. The networking term "firewall" is a system or group of systems that enforces an access-control policy between two networks. It may also be defined as a mechanism used to protect a trusted network from an untrusted network. Of course, firewalls cannot solve every security problem. A firewall is one of the mechanisms used to establish a network security perimeter in support of a network security policy. It should never be the only mechanism or method employed. For a firewall to guard effectively, you must design and deploy it appropriately. This requires integrating the firewall into a broad information-security policy. In addition, specific policies must be implemented within the firewall itself.

#### 13.1.1 Stateful Inspection Firewall.

Stateful inspection firewalls restrict access by screening data packets against defined access rules. They make access control decisions based on IP address and protocol. They also "inspect" the session data to assure the integrity of the connection and to adapt to dynamic protocols. These firewalls generally provide the best speed and transparency; however, they may lack the granular application level access control or caching that some proxies support. Firewalls, of one type or another, have become an integral part of standard security solutions for enterprises.

#### 13.1.2 About the ZyXEL Device Firewall

The ZyXEL Device firewall is a stateful inspection firewall and is designed to protect against Denial of Service attacks when activated. The ZyXEL Device's purpose is to allow a private Local Area Network (LAN) to be securely connected to the Internet. The ZyXEL Device can be used to prevent theft, destruction and modification of data, as well as log events, which may be important to the security of your network.

The ZyXEL Device is installed between the LAN and a broadband modem connecting to the Internet. This allows it to act as a secure gateway for all data passing between the Internet and the LAN.

The ZyXEL Device has one Ethernet WAN port and four Ethernet LAN ports, which are used to physically separate the network into two areas. The WAN (Wide Area Network) port attaches to the broadband (cable or DSL) modem to the Internet.

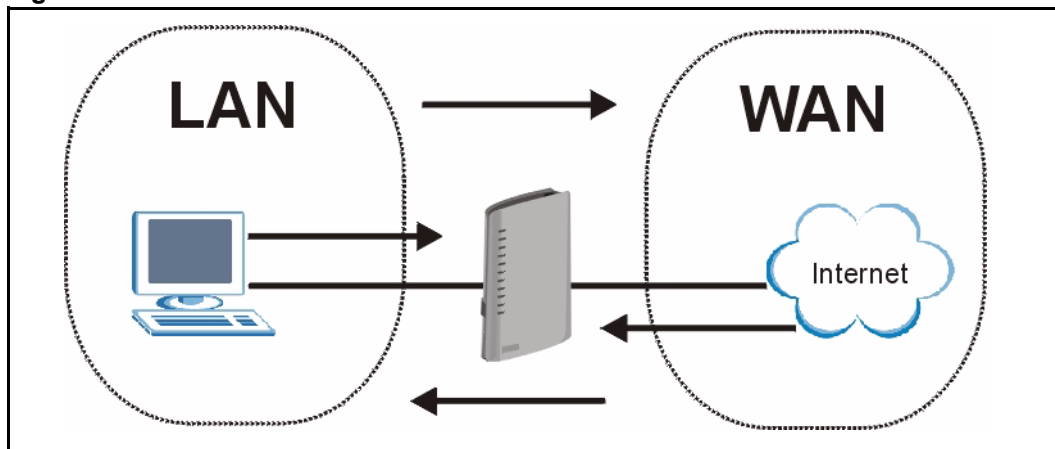
The LAN (Local Area Network) port attaches to a network of computers, which needs security from the outside world. These computers will have access to Internet services such as e-mail, FTP and the World Wide Web. However, "inbound access" is not allowed (by default) unless the remote host is authorized to use a specific service.

### 13.1.3 Guidelines For Enhancing Security With Your Firewall

- 1 Change the default password via web configurator.
- 2 Think about access control before you connect to the network in any way, including attaching a modem to the port.
- 3 Limit who can access your router.
- 4 Don't enable any local service (such as telnet or FTP) that you don't use. Any enabled service could present a potential security risk. A determined hacker might be able to find creative ways to misuse the enabled services to access the firewall or the network.
- 5 For local services that are enabled, protect against misuse. Protect by configuring the services to communicate only with specific peers, and protect by configuring rules to block packets for the services at specific interfaces.
- 6 Protect against IP spoofing by making sure the firewall is active.
- 7 Keep the firewall in a secured (locked) room.

### 13.1.4 The Firewall, NAT and Remote Management

Figure 69 Firewall Rule Directions



#### 13.1.4.1 LAN-to-WAN rules

**LAN-to-WAN** rules are local network to Internet firewall rules. The default is to forward all traffic from your local network to the Internet.

You can block certain **LAN-to-WAN** traffic in the **Services** screen (click the **Services** tab). All services displayed in the **Blocked Services** list box are **LAN-to-WAN** firewall rules that block those services originating from the LAN.

Blocked **LAN-to-WAN** packets are considered alerts. Alerts are “higher priority logs” that include system errors, attacks and attempted access to blocked web sites. Alerts appear in red in the **View Log** screen. You may choose to have alerts e-mailed immediately in the **Log Settings** screen.

LAN-to-LAN/ZyXEL Device means the LAN to the ZyXEL Device LAN interface. This is always allowed, as this is how you manage the ZyXEL Device from your local computer.

#### 13.1.4.2 WAN-to-LAN rules

**WAN-to-LAN** rules are Internet to your local network firewall rules. The default is to block all traffic from the Internet to your local network.

How can you forward certain WAN to LAN traffic? You may allow traffic originating from the WAN to be forwarded to the LAN by:

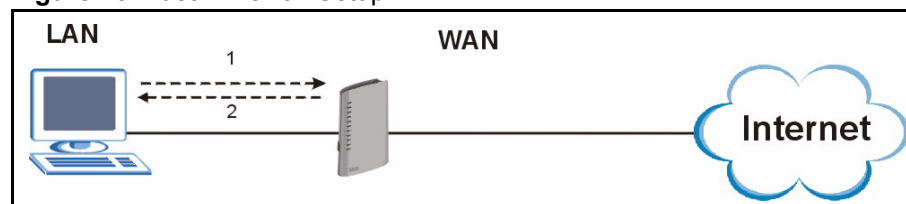
- Configuring NAT port forwarding rules.
- Configuring **One-to-One** and **Many-One-to-One** NAT mapping rules in the web configurator **Address Mapping** screen or SMT NAT menus.
- Configuring **WAN** or **LAN & WAN** access for services in the **Remote Management** screens or SMT menus. When you allow remote management from the WAN, you are actually configuring WAN-to-WAN/ZyXEL Device firewall rules. WAN-to-WAN/ZyXEL Device firewall rules are Internet to the ZyXEL Device WAN interface firewall rules. The default is to block all such traffic. When you decide what WAN-to-LAN packets to log, you are in fact deciding what **WAN-to-LAN** and WAN-to-WAN/ZyXEL Device packets to log.

Forwarded **WAN-to-LAN** packets are not considered alerts.

## 13.2 Triangle Route

When the firewall is on, your ZyXEL Device acts as a secure gateway between your LAN and the Internet. In an ideal network topology, all incoming and outgoing network traffic passes through the ZyXEL Device to protect your LAN against attacks.

**Figure 70** Ideal Firewall Setup



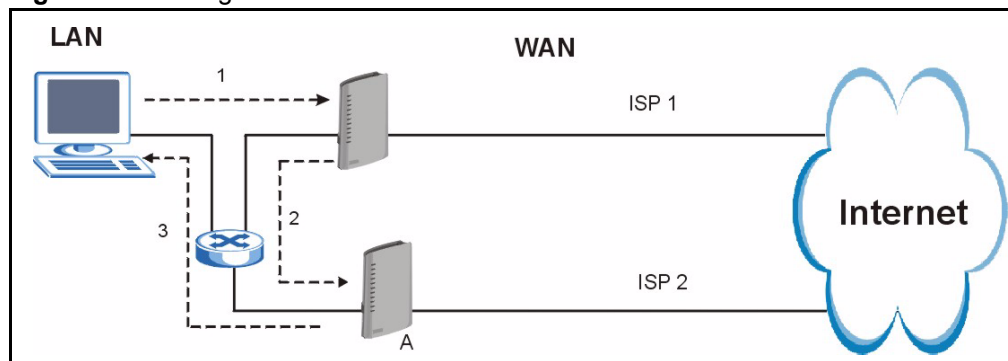
### 13.2.1 The “Triangle Route” Problem

A traffic route is a path for sending or receiving data packets between two Ethernet devices. You may have more than one connection to the Internet (through one or more ISPs). If an alternate gateway is on the LAN (and its IP address is in the same subnet as the ZyXEL Device's LAN IP address), the “triangle route” (also called asymmetrical route) problem may occur. The steps below describe the “triangle route” problem.

- 1 A computer on the LAN initiates a connection by sending out a SYN packet to a receiving server on the WAN.
- 2 The ZyXEL Device reroutes the SYN packet through Gateway A on the LAN to the WAN.
- 3 The reply from the WAN goes directly to the computer on the LAN without going through the ZyXEL Device.

As a result, the ZyXEL Device resets the connection, as the connection has not been acknowledged.

**Figure 71** “Triangle Route” Problem



### 13.2.2 Solving the “Triangle Route” Problem

If you have the ZyXEL Device allow triangle route sessions, traffic from the WAN can go directly to a LAN computer without passing through the ZyXEL Device and its firewall protection.

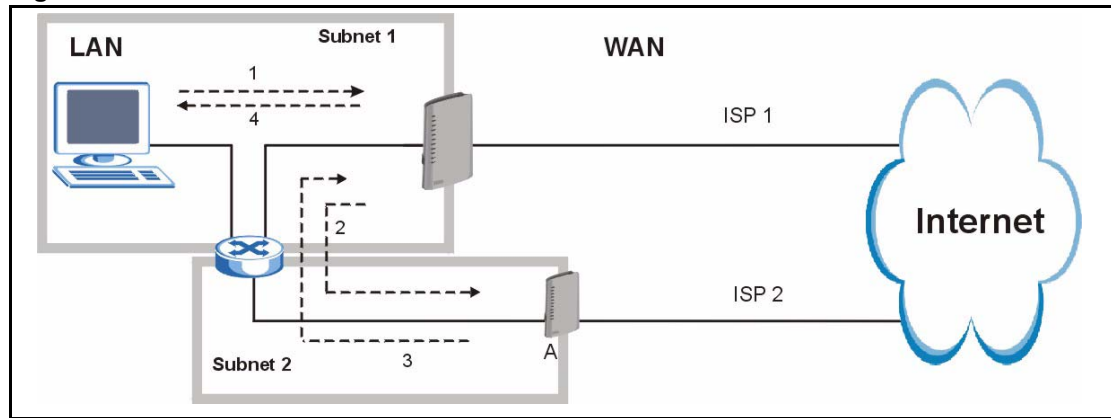
Another solution is to use IP alias. IP alias allows you to partition your network into logical sections over the same Ethernet interface. Your ZyXEL Device supports up to three logical LAN interfaces with the ZyXEL Device being the gateway for each logical network.

It's like having multiple LAN networks that actually use the same physical cables and ports. By putting your LAN and Gateway A in different subnets, all returning network traffic must pass through the ZyXEL Device to your LAN. The following steps describe such a scenario.

- 1 A computer on the LAN initiates a connection by sending a SYN packet to a receiving server on the WAN.
- 2 The ZyXEL Device reroutes the packet to Gateway A, which is in Subnet 2.

- 3 The reply from the WAN goes to the ZyXEL Device.
- 4 The ZyXEL Device then sends it to the computer on the LAN in Subnet 1.

**Figure 72** IP Alias



## 13.3 Firewall Screens

### 13.3.1 General Firewall Screen

Use this screen to configure the basic settings for your firewall. To access this screen, click **Security > Firewall > General**.

**Figure 73** Security > Firewall > General

**General** Services

**Firewall Setup**

Enable Firewall

Bypass Triangle Route

Make sure this check box is selected to have the firewall protect your LAN from Denial of Service (DoS) attacks.

Max NAT/Firewall Session Per User: 2048

Packet Direction	Log
LAN to WAN	No Log
WAN to LAN	No Log

Apply Reset

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 59** Security > Firewall > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Enable Firewall	Select this to activate the firewall. The ZyXEL Device controls access and protects against Denial of Service (DoS) attacks when the firewall is activated.
Bypass Triangle Route	Select this if you want to let some traffic from the WAN go directly to a computer in the LAN without passing through the ZyXEL Device. See the appendices for more information about triangle route topology.
Max NAT/Firewall Session Per User	Select the maximum number of NAT rules and firewall rules the ZyXEL Device enforces at one time. The ZyXEL Device automatically allocates memory for the maximum number of rules, regardless of whether or not there is a rule to enforce. This is the same number you enter in <b>Network &gt; NAT &gt; General</b> .
Packet Direction	This field displays each direction that packets pass through the ZyXEL Device.
Log	Select the situations in which you want to create log entries for firewall events. <b>No Log</b> - do not create any log entries <b>Log Blocked</b> - ( <b>LAN to WAN</b> only) create log entries when packets are blocked <b>Log Forwarded</b> - ( <b>WAN to LAN</b> only) create log entries when packets are forwarded <b>Log All</b> - create log entries for every packet
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 13.3.2 Firewall Services Screen

Use this screen to enable service blocking, to set up the date and time service blocking is effective, and to maintain the list of services you want to block. To access this screen, click **Security > Firewall > Services**.

**Figure 74** Security > Firewall > Services

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 60** Security > Firewall > Services

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Service Setup	
Enable Services Blocking	Select this to activate service blocking. The <b>Schedule to Block</b> section controls what days and what times service blocking is actually effective, however.
Available Services	This is a list of pre-defined services (destination ports) you may prohibit your LAN computers from using. Select the port you want to block, and click <b>Add</b> to add the port to the <b>Blocked Services</b> field. A custom port is a service that is not available in the pre-defined <b>Available Services</b> list. You must define it using the <b>Type</b> and <b>Port Number</b> fields. See <a href="#">Appendix G on page 285</a> for some examples of services.
Blocked Services	This is a list of services (ports) that are inaccessible to computers on your LAN when service blocking is effective. To remove a service from this list, select the service, and click <b>Delete</b> .
Type	Select <b>TCP</b> or <b>UDP</b> , based on which one the custom port uses.
Port Number	Enter the range of port numbers that defines the service. For example, suppose you want to define the Gnutella service. Select <b>TCP</b> type and enter a port range of <b>6345-6349</b> .
Add	Click this to add the selected service in <b>Available Services</b> to the <b>Blocked Services</b> list.
Delete	Select a service in the <b>Blocked Services</b> , and click this to remove the service from the list.

**Table 60** Security > Firewall > Services

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear All	Click this to remove all the services in the <b>Blocked Services</b> list.
Schedule to Block	
Day to Block	Select which days of the week you want the service blocking to be effective.
Time of Day to Block	Select what time each day you want service blocking to be effective. Enter times in 24-hour format; for example, 3:00pm should be entered as 15:00.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 14

## Content Filter

Use these screens to create and enforce policies that restrict access to the Internet based on content.

### 14.1 Content Filtering Overview

Internet content filtering allows you to create and enforce Internet access policies tailored to their needs. Content filtering is the ability to block certain web features or specific URL keywords.

The ZyXEL Device can block web features such as ActiveX controls, Java applets, cookies and disable web proxies. The ZyXEL Device also allows you to define time periods and days during which the ZyXEL Device performs content filtering.

### 14.2 Content Filtering Screens

#### 14.2.1 Content Filter Screen

Use this screen to set up a trusted IP address, which web features are restricted, and which keywords are blocked when content filtering is effective. To access this screen, click **Security > Content Filter > Filter**.

**Figure 75** Security > Content Filter > Filter

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 61** Security > Content Filter > Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trusted IP Setup	
Trusted Computer IP Address	You can allow a specific computer to access all Internet resources without the restrictions you set in these screens. Enter the IP address of the trusted computer.
Restrict Web Features	Select the web features you want to disable. If a user downloads a page with a restricted feature, that part of the web page appears blank or grayed out.
ActiveX	<b>ActiveX</b> - This is a tool for building dynamic and active Web pages and distributed object applications. When you visit an ActiveX Web site, ActiveX controls are downloaded to your browser, where they remain in case you visit the site again.
Java	<b>Java</b> - This is used to build downloadable Web components or Internet and intranet business applications of all kinds.
Cookies	<b>Cookies</b> - This is used by Web servers to track usage and to provide service based on ID.
Web Proxy	<b>Web Proxy</b> - This is a server that acts as an intermediary between a user and the Internet to provide security, administrative control, and caching service. When a proxy server is located on the WAN, it is possible for LAN users to avoid content filtering restrictions.
Keyword Blocking	
Enable URL Keyword Blocking	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to block Web sites based on words in the web site address. For example, if you block the keyword <b>bad</b> , <a href="http://www.website.com/bad.html">http://www.website.com/bad.html</a> is blocked.
Keyword	Type a keyword you want to block in this field. You can use up to 64 printable ASCII characters. There is no wildcard character, however.

**Table 61** Security > Content Filter > Filter

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click this to add the specified <b>Keyword</b> to the <b>Keyword List</b> . You can enter up to 64 keywords.
Keyword List	This field displays the keywords that are blocked when <b>Enable URL Keyword Blocking</b> is selected. To delete a keyword, select it, click <b>Delete</b> , and click <b>Apply</b> .
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected keyword in the <b>Keyword List</b> . The keyword disappears after you click <b>Apply</b> .
Clear All	Click this button to remove all of the keywords in the <b>Keyword List</b> .
Denied Access Message	Enter the message that is displayed when the ZyXEL Device's content filter feature blocks access to a web site.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 14.2.2 Content Filter Schedule Screen

Use this screen to set up the schedule when content filtering is effective. To access this screen, click **Security > Content Filter > Schedule**.

**Figure 76** Security > Content Filter > Schedule

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 62** Security > Content Filter > Schedule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Day to Block	Select which days of the week you want content filtering to be effective.
Time of Day to Block	Select what time each day you want content filtering to be effective. Enter times in 24-hour format; for example, 3:00pm should be entered as 15:00.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 15

## Bandwidth MGMT

Use these screens to manage the amount of traffic the ZyXEL Device routes through each interface.

### 15.1 Bandwidth Management Overview

Bandwidth management allows you to allocate an interface's outgoing capacity to specific types of traffic. It can also help you make sure that the ZyXEL Device forwards certain types of traffic (especially real-time applications) with minimum delay. With the use of real-time applications such as Voice-over-IP (VoIP) increasing, the requirement for bandwidth allocation is also increasing.

Bandwidth management addresses questions such as:

- Who gets how much access to specific applications?
- What priority level should you give to each type of traffic?
- Which traffic must have guaranteed delivery?
- How much bandwidth should be allotted to guarantee delivery?

Bandwidth management also allows you to configure the allowed output for an interface to match what the network can handle. This helps reduce delays and dropped packets at the next routing device. For example, you can set the WAN interface speed to 1024 kbps (or less) if the broadband device connected to the WAN port has an upstream speed of 1024 kbps.

#### 15.1.1 Bandwidth Classes and Filters

Use bandwidth classes and sub-classes to allocate specific amounts of bandwidth capacity (bandwidth budgets). Configure a bandwidth filter to define a bandwidth class (or sub-class) based on a specific application and/or subnet. Use the [Bandwidth Class Setup Screen](#) to set up a bandwidth class's name, bandwidth allotment, and bandwidth filter. You can configure up to one bandwidth filter per bandwidth class. You can also configure bandwidth classes without bandwidth filters. However, it is recommended that you configure sub-classes with filters for any classes that you configure without filters. The ZyXEL Device leaves the bandwidth budget allocated and unused for a class that does not have a filter or sub-classes with filters. View your configured bandwidth classes and sub-classes in the [Bandwidth Class Setup Screen](#).

The total of the configured bandwidth budgets for sub-classes cannot exceed the configured bandwidth budget speed of the parent class.

## 15.1.2 Proportional Bandwidth Allocation

Bandwidth management allows you to define how much bandwidth each class gets; however, the actual bandwidth allotted to each class decreases or increases in proportion to actual available bandwidth.

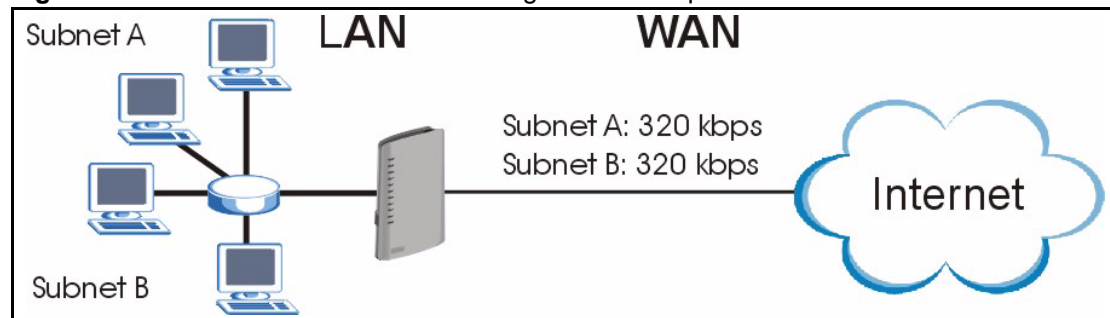
## 15.1.3 Application-based Bandwidth Management

You can create bandwidth classes based on individual applications (like VoIP, Web, FTP, E-mail and Video for example).

## 15.1.4 Subnet-based Bandwidth Management

You can create bandwidth classes based on subnets. The following figure shows LAN subnets. You could configure one bandwidth class for subnet A and another for subnet B.

**Figure 77** Subnet-based Bandwidth Management Example



## 15.1.5 Application- and Subnet-based Bandwidth Management

You could also create bandwidth classes based on a combination of a subnet and an application. The following example table shows bandwidth allocations for application specific traffic from separate LAN subnets.

**Table 63** Application and Subnet-based Bandwidth Management Example

TRAFFIC TYPE	FROM SUBNET A	FROM SUBNET B
VoIP	64 Kbps	64 Kbps
Web	64 Kbps	64 Kbps
FTP	64 Kbps	64 Kbps
E-mail	64 Kbps	64 Kbps
Video	64 Kbps	64 Kbps

## 15.1.6 Scheduler

The scheduler divides up an interface's bandwidth among the bandwidth classes. The ZyXEL Device has two types of schedulers: fairness-based and priority-based.

With the priority-based scheduler, the ZyXEL Device forwards traffic from bandwidth classes according to the priorities that you assign to the bandwidth classes. The larger a bandwidth class's priority number is, the higher the priority. Assign real-time applications (like those using audio or video) a higher priority number to provide smoother operation.

The ZyXEL Device divides bandwidth equally among bandwidth classes when using the fairness-based scheduler; thus preventing one bandwidth class from using all of the interface's bandwidth.

## 15.1.7 Maximize Bandwidth Usage

This option allows the ZyXEL Device to divide up any available bandwidth on the interface (including unallocated bandwidth and any allocated bandwidth that a class is not using) among the bandwidth classes that require more bandwidth.

When you enable maximize bandwidth usage, the ZyXEL Device first makes sure that each bandwidth class gets up to its bandwidth allotment. Next, the ZyXEL Device divides up an interface's available bandwidth (bandwidth that is unbudgeted or unused by the classes) depending on how many bandwidth classes require more bandwidth and on their priority levels. When only one class requires more bandwidth, the ZyXEL Device gives extra bandwidth to that class.

When multiple classes require more bandwidth, the ZyXEL Device gives the highest priority classes the available bandwidth first (as much as they require, if there is enough available bandwidth), and then to lower priority classes if there is still bandwidth available. The ZyXEL Device distributes the available bandwidth equally among classes with the same priority level.

### 15.1.7.1 Reserving Bandwidth for Non-Bandwidth Class Traffic

Do the following three steps to configure the ZyXEL Device to allow bandwidth for traffic that is not defined in a bandwidth filter.

- 1 Leave some of the interface's bandwidth unbudgeted.
- 2 Do not enable the interface's **Maximize Bandwidth Usage** option.
- 3 Do not enable bandwidth borrowing on the sub-classes (see [Section 15.1.8 on page 165](#)).

### 15.1.7.2 Maximize Bandwidth Usage Example

Here is an example of a ZyXEL Device that has maximize bandwidth usage enabled on an interface. The following table shows each bandwidth class's bandwidth budget. The classes are set up based on subnets. The interface is set to 10240 kbps. Each subnet is allocated 2048 kbps. The unbudgeted 2048 kbps allows traffic not defined in any of the bandwidth filters to go out when you do not select the maximize bandwidth option.

**Table 64** Maximize Bandwidth Usage Example

BANDWIDTH CLASSES AND ALLOTMENTS	
Root Class: 10240 kbps	Administration: 2048 kbps
	Sales: 2048 kbps
	Marketing: 2048 kbps
	Research: 2048 kbps

The ZyXEL Device divides up the unbudgeted 2048 kbps among the classes that require more bandwidth. If the administration department only uses 1024 kbps of the budgeted 2048 kbps, the ZyXEL Device also divides the remaining 1024 kbps among the classes that require more bandwidth. Therefore, the ZyXEL Device divides a total of 3072 kbps of unbudgeted and unused bandwidth among the classes that require more bandwidth.

### 15.1.7.3 Priority-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth

The following table shows the priorities of the bandwidth classes and the amount of bandwidth that each class gets.

**Table 65** Priority-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth Example

BANDWIDTH CLASSES, PRIORITIES AND ALLOTMENTS	
Root Class: 10240 kbps	Administration: Priority 4, 1024 kbps
	Sales: Priority 6, 3584 kbps
	Marketing: Priority 6, 3584 kbps
	Research: Priority 5, 2048 kbps

Suppose that all of the classes except for the administration class need more bandwidth.

- Each class gets up to its budgeted bandwidth. The administration class only uses 1024 kbps of its budgeted 2048 kbps.
- The sales and marketing are first to get extra bandwidth because they have the highest priority (6). If they each require 1536 kbps or more of extra bandwidth, the ZyXEL Device divides the total 3072 kbps total of unbudgeted and unused bandwidth equally between the sales and marketing departments (1536 kbps extra to each for a total of 3584 kbps for each) because they both have the highest priority level.



- Research requires more bandwidth but only gets its budgeted 2048 kbps because all of the unbudgeted and unused bandwidth goes to the higher priority sales and marketing classes.

#### 15.1.7.4 Fairness-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth

The following table shows the amount of bandwidth that each class gets.

**Table 66** Fairness-based Allotment of Unused and Unbudgeted Bandwidth Example

BANDWIDTH CLASSES AND ALLOTMENTS	
Root Class: 10240 kbps	Administration: 1024 kbps
	Sales: 3072 kbps
	Marketing: 3072 kbps
	Research: 3072 kbps

Suppose that all of the classes except for the administration class need more bandwidth.

- Each class gets up to its budgeted bandwidth. The administration class only uses 1024 kbps of its budgeted 2048 kbps.
- The ZyXEL Device divides the total 3072 kbps total of unbudgeted and unused bandwidth equally among the other classes. 1024 kbps extra goes to each so the other classes each get a total of 3072 kbps

### 15.1.8 Bandwidth Borrowing

Bandwidth borrowing allows a sub-class to borrow unused bandwidth from its parent class, whereas maximize bandwidth usage allows any bandwidth class to borrow any unused or unbudgeted bandwidth on the whole interface.

Enable bandwidth borrowing on a sub-class to allow the sub-class to use the parent class's unused bandwidth. The parent class's unused bandwidth is given to the highest priority sub-class first (see [Section 15.1.8.1 on page 166](#)).

The total of the bandwidth allotments for sub-classes cannot exceed the bandwidth allotment of the parent class. The ZyXEL Device uses the scheduler to divide the parent class's unused bandwidth among the sub-classes that have bandwidth borrowing enabled.

### 15.1.8.1 Bandwidth Borrowing Example

Here is an example of bandwidth management with classes configured for bandwidth borrowing. The classes are set up based on departments and individuals within certain departments.

**Table 67** Bandwidth Borrowing Example

BANDWIDTH CLASSES AND BANDWIDTH BORROWING SETTINGS	
Root Class:	Administration: Borrowing Enabled
	Sales: Borrowing Disabled
	Marketing: Borrowing Enabled
	Research: Borrowing Enabled

- The Sales class cannot borrow unused bandwidth from the Root class because the Sales class has bandwidth borrowing disabled.

### 15.1.8.2 Maximize Bandwidth Usage With Bandwidth Borrowing

If you configure both maximize bandwidth usage (on the interface) and bandwidth borrowing (on individual sub-classes), the ZyXEL Device functions as follows.

- 1 The ZyXEL Device sends traffic according to each bandwidth class's bandwidth budget.
- 2 The ZyXEL Device assigns a parent class's unused bandwidth to its sub-classes that have more traffic than their budgets and have bandwidth borrowing enabled. The ZyXEL Device gives priority to sub-classes of higher priority and treats classes of the same priority equally.
- 3 The ZyXEL Device assigns any remaining unused or unbudgeted bandwidth on the interface to any class that requires it. The ZyXEL Device gives priority to classes of higher priority and treats classes of the same level equally.
- 4 If the bandwidth requirements of all of the traffic classes are met and there is still some unbudgeted bandwidth, the ZyXEL Device assigns it to traffic that does not match any of the classes.

### 15.1.9 Over Allotment of Bandwidth

You can set the bandwidth management speed for an interface higher than the interface's actual transmission speed. Higher priority traffic gets to use up to its allocated bandwidth, even if it takes up all of the interface's available bandwidth. This could stop lower priority traffic from being sent. The following is an example.

**Table 68** Over Allotment of Bandwidth Example

BANDWIDTH CLASSES, ALLOTMENTS	PRIORITIES
Actual outgoing bandwidth available on the interface: 1000 kbps	

**Table 68** Over Allotment of Bandwidth Example

BANDWIDTH CLASSES, ALLOTMENTS		PRIORITIES
Root Class: 1500 kbps (same as Speed setting)	VoIP traffic (Service = SIP): 500 Kbps	High
	NetMeeting traffic (Service = H.323): 500 kbps	High
	FTP (Service = FTP): 500 Kbps	Medium

If you use VoIP and NetMeeting at the same time, the device allocates up to 500 Kbps of bandwidth to each of them before it allocates any bandwidth to FTP. As a result, FTP can only use bandwidth when VoIP and NetMeeting do not use all of their allocated bandwidth.

Suppose you try to browse the web too. In this case, VoIP, NetMeeting and FTP all have higher priority, so they get to use the bandwidth first. You can only browse the web when VoIP, NetMeeting, and FTP do not use all 1000 Kbps of available bandwidth.

## 15.2 Bandwidth Management Screens

### 15.2.1 Bandwidth Management Summary Screen

Use this screen to enable bandwidth management on an interface and to set the maximum allowed bandwidth and the scheduler for the interface. You can also enable or disable maximize bandwidth usage. To access this screen, click **Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Summary**.

**Figure 78** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Summary

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 69** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Summary

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LAN	
Active	Select this to enable bandwidth management on the LAN. Bandwidth management applies to all traffic flowing out of the router through the LAN, regardless of the traffic's source. Traffic redirect or IP alias may cause LAN-to-LAN traffic to pass through the ZyXEL Device and be managed by bandwidth management.
Speed	Enter the amount of bandwidth for this interface that you want to allocate using bandwidth management. The recommendation is to set this speed to match the interface's actual transmission speed. For example, set the LAN interface speed to 10000 kbps if your Internet connection has an upstream transmission speed of 10 Mbps. You can set this number higher than the interface's actual transmission speed. This will stop lower priority traffic from being sent if higher priority traffic uses all of the actual bandwidth. You can also set this number lower than the interface's actual transmission speed. If you do not enable <b>Max Bandwidth Usage</b> , this will cause the ZyXEL Device to not use some of the interface's available bandwidth. This field is not affected by the <a href="#">Bandwidth Management Wizard</a> .
Scheduler	Select <b>Priority-Based</b> to give preference to bandwidth classes with higher priorities. Select <b>Fairness-Based</b> to treat all bandwidth classes equally.
Maximize Bandwidth Usage	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to divide any unallocated and unused bandwidth among bandwidth classes that require bandwidth. Clear this if you want to reserve bandwidth for traffic that does not match a bandwidth class or if you want to limit the speed of this interface.
WAN	

**Table 69** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Summary

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable bandwidth management on the WAN. Bandwidth management applies to all traffic flowing out of the router through the WAN, regardless of the traffic's source.
Speed	<p>Enter the amount of bandwidth for this interface that you want to allocate using bandwidth management.</p> <p>The recommendation is to set this speed to match the interface's actual transmission speed. For example, set the WAN interface speed to 1000 kbps if your Internet connection has an upstream transmission speed of 1 Mbps.</p> <p>You can set this number higher than the interface's actual transmission speed. This will stop lower priority traffic from being sent if higher priority traffic uses all of the actual bandwidth.</p> <p>You can also set this number lower than the interface's actual transmission speed. If you do not enable <b>Max Bandwidth Usage</b>, this will cause the ZyXEL Device to not use some of the interface's available bandwidth.</p> <p>This field is not affected by the <a href="#">Bandwidth Management Wizard</a>.</p>
Scheduler	Select <b>Priority-Based</b> to give preference to bandwidth classes with higher priorities. Select <b>Fairness-Based</b> to treat all bandwidth classes equally.
Maximize Bandwidth Usage	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to divide any unallocated and unused bandwidth among bandwidth classes that require bandwidth. Clear this if you want to reserve bandwidth for traffic that does not match a bandwidth class or if you want to limit the speed of this interface.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 15.2.2 Bandwidth Class Setup Screen

Use this screen to look at the configured bandwidth classes by individual interface. Each interface has a permanent root class. The bandwidth budget of the root class is equal to the speed you configured on the interface (see [Section 15.2.1 on page 167](#)). There is a default class for all the bandwidth in the Root Class that is not allocated to bandwidth classes.

**Note:** For each interface, you must enable bandwidth management before you can configure classes.

To access this screen, click **Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup**.

**Figure 79** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 70** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Class Setup	
Interface	Select the interface for which you wish to set up classes. Bandwidth management controls outgoing traffic on an interface, not incoming. In order to limit the download bandwidth of the LAN users, set the bandwidth management class on the LAN. In order to limit the upload bandwidth, set the bandwidth management class on the corresponding WAN interface.
Root Class	In this section, you can look at each class and its allocated bandwidth. Select the class to which you want to add a sub-class, which you want to edit, or which you want to delete.  If you used the <b>Bandwidth Management Wizard</b> , each service you selected (except WWW) becomes a LAN sub-class and a WAN sub-class in this screen. <b>WWW</b> only becomes a LAN sub-class.
Add Sub-Class	Click this to add a sub-class to the selected class.
Edit	Click this to configure the selected class. You cannot edit the root class. The <b>Bandwidth Class Edit</b> screen appears.
Delete	Click this to delete the selected class and all its sub-classes. You cannot delete the root class.

### 15.2.3 Bandwidth Class Edit Screen

Use this screen to configure a bandwidth management class.

**Note:** For each interface, you must enable bandwidth management before you can configure classes.

To access this screen, click **Add Sub-Class** in **Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup**.

**Figure 80** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup > Edit

See [Appendix G on page 285](#) for examples of services for which you might create bandwidth classes. Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 71** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup > Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
	This section lets you set the budget and priority for this class.
Class Name	Finish the auto-generated name, or enter a descriptive name up to 20 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are allowed.
Bandwidth Budget	Enter the maximum bandwidth for the class, in kbps. The recommendation is 20 - 20000 kbps for each class.
Priority	Enter the priority of this class. The higher the number, the higher the priority. Legal values are 0 - 7. The default setting is 3.
Borrow bandwidth from parent class	Select this option to allow a sub-class to borrow bandwidth from its parent class if the parent class is not using up its bandwidth budget. Bandwidth borrowing is governed by the priority of the sub-classes. That is, a sub-class with the highest priority (7) is the first to borrow bandwidth from its parent class. Do not select this for the classes directly below the root class if you want to leave bandwidth available for other traffic types (see <a href="#">Section 15.1.7.1 on page 163</a> ) or you want to set the interface's speed to match what the next device in network can handle (see the <b>Speed</b> field description in the <a href="#">Bandwidth Management Summary Screen</a> ).
	This section lets you set criteria that are used to identify which traffic is managed in this class and which traffic is not managed in this class. If you leave the default value in a field, there is no restriction for that criteria.
Enable Bandwidth Filter	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to use at least one of the following filter criteria when it manages bandwidth. You must enter a value in at least one of the following fields. (The <b>Subnet Mask</b> fields are only available when you enter the destination or source IP address.)

**Table 71** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Class Setup > Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Application	<p>Select a pre-defined application. If you select a predefined application, do not set up the other filter criteria.</p> <p><b>FTP</b> (File Transfer Program) enables fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail. Select this to configure the bandwidth filter for FTP traffic.</p> <p><b>SIP</b> (Session Initiation Protocol) is a signaling protocol used in VoIP, instant messaging, events notification and conferencing. The ZyXEL Device supports SIP traffic pass-through. Select this to configure this bandwidth filter for SIP traffic. This makes it easier to manage bandwidth for SIP traffic and is useful, for example, when there is a VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) device on your LAN.</p>
Destination IP Address	Enter the destination IP address.
Destination Subnet Mask	<p>This field is effective if you specify a <b>Destination IP Address</b>.</p> <p>Enter the destination subnet mask.</p>
Destination Port	Enter the destination port number.
Source IP Address	Enter the source IP address.
Source Subnet Mask	<p>This field is effective if you specify a <b>Source IP Address</b>.</p> <p>Enter the source subnet mask.</p>
Source Port	Enter the source port number.
Protocol ID	Enter the IP protocol number (service type); for example, 1 for ICMP, 6 for TCP or 17 for UDP.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 15.2.4 Bandwidth Monitor Screen

Use this screen to look at the device's bandwidth usage and allocation. To access this screen, click **Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Monitor**.



**Figure 81** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Monitor

Class Name	Budget (kbps)	Current Usage (kbps)
Root Class	100000	190
LAN-1	100	0
Default Class	99900	190

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 72** Management > Bandwidth MGMT > Monitor

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interface	Select the interface at which you want to look in this screen.
Class Name	This field displays the name of each bandwidth class in the selected interface. The <b>Default Class</b> represents all the bandwidth in the <b>Root Class</b> that is not allocated to bandwidth classes. If you do not select <b>Maximize bandwidth usage</b> in the <a href="#">Bandwidth Management Summary Screen</a> , the ZyXEL Device uses the bandwidth in this default class to only send traffic that does not match any of the bandwidth classes. If you allocate all the root class's bandwidth to bandwidth classes, the <b>Default Class</b> still displays a budget of 2 kbps, the minimum amount of bandwidth that can be assigned to a bandwidth class.
Budget (kbps)	This field displays the amount of bandwidth allocated to each bandwidth class.
Current Usage (kbps)	This field displays the amount of bandwidth that each bandwidth class is using.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to update the screen.



# CHAPTER 16

## Remote MGMT

Use these screens to control which computers can use which services to access the ZyXEL Device on each interface.

### 16.1 Remote Management Overview

Remote management allows you to determine which services/protocols can access which ZyXEL Device interface (if any) from which computers.

You may manage your ZyXEL Device from a remote location via:

- Internet (WAN only)
- ALL (LAN and WAN)
- LAN only
- Neither (Disable).

To disable remote management of a service, select **Disable** in the corresponding **Server Access** field.

You may only have one remote management session running at a time. The ZyXEL Device automatically disconnects a remote management session of lower priority when another remote management session of higher priority starts. The priorities for the different types of remote management sessions are as follows.

- 1 Telnet
- 2 HTTP

#### 16.1.1 Remote Management Limitations

Remote management over LAN or WAN will not work when:

- 1 A filter in SMT menu 3.1 (LAN) or in menu 11.5 (WAN) is applied to block a Telnet, FTP or Web service.
- 2 You have disabled that service in one of the remote management screens.
- 3 The IP address in the **Secured Client IP** field does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the ZyXEL Device will disconnect the session immediately.
- 4 There is already another remote management session with an equal or higher priority running. You may only have one remote management session running at one time.

## 16.1.2 Remote Management and NAT

When NAT is enabled:

- Use the ZyXEL Device's WAN IP address when configuring from the WAN.
- Use the ZyXEL Device's LAN IP address when configuring from the LAN.

## 16.1.3 System Timeout

There is a default system management idle timeout of five minutes (three hundred seconds). The ZyXEL Device automatically logs you out if the management session remains idle for longer than this timeout period. The management session does not time out when a statistics screen is polling. You can change the timeout period in the **SYSTEM General** screen.

## 16.2 Remote Management Screens

### 16.2.1 WWW Screen

Use this screen to control HTTP access to your ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Management > Remote MGMT > WWW**.

**Figure 82** Management > Remote MGMT > WWW

The screenshot shows the 'WWW' configuration page in the device's web interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Telnet', 'FTP', 'DNS', and 'Security'. The 'WWW' tab is active. Below the tabs, the 'WWW' section contains the following fields:

- Server Port:** A text input field containing the value '80'.
- Server Access:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'LAN & WAN'.
- Secured Client IP Address:** Radio buttons for 'All' (selected) and 'Selected', followed by a text input field containing '0.0.0.0'.

Below these fields is a **Note:** icon and text: '1. For UPnP to function normally, the HTTP service must be available for LAN computers using UPnP.' At the bottom of the form are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 73** Management > Remote MGMT > WWW

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Port	Enter the port number this service can use to access the ZyXEL Device. The computer must use the same port number.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>Selected</b> to only allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.

**Table 73** Management > Remote MGMT > WWW

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 16.2.2 Telnet Screen

Use this screen to control Telnet access to your ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Management > Remote MGMT > Telnet**.

**Figure 83** Management > Remote MGMT > Telnet

The screenshot shows the 'Telnet' configuration page. At the top, there are navigation tabs: WWW, Telnet (selected), FTP, DNS, and Security. Below the tabs, the 'Telnet' section contains the following fields:

- Server Port:** A text input field containing the value '23'.
- Server Access:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'LAN & WAN'.
- Secured Client IP Address:** Two radio buttons, 'All' (which is selected) and 'Selected', followed by a text input field containing '0.0.0.0'.

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 74** Management > Remote MGMT > Telnet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Port	Enter the port number this service can use to access the ZyXEL Device. The computer must use the same port number.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>Selected</b> to only allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 16.2.3 FTP Screen

Use this screen to control FTP access to your ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Management > Remote MGMT > FTP**.

**Figure 84** Management > Remote MGMT > FTP

The screenshot shows the FTP configuration page. At the top, there are navigation tabs: WWW, Telnet, FTP (selected), DNS, and Security. Below the tabs, the title 'FTP' is displayed. The configuration fields are as follows:

- Server Port:** A text input field containing the value '21'.
- Server Access:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'LAN & WAN'.
- Secured Client IP Address:** Two radio buttons, 'All' (which is selected) and 'Selected', followed by a text input field containing '0.0.0.0'.

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Reset'.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 75** Management > Remote MGMT > FTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Port	Enter the port number this service can use to access the ZyXEL Device. The computer must use the same port number.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>Selected</b> to only allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 16.2.4 DNS Screen

Use this screen to control DNS access to your ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Management > Remote MGMT > DNS**.

**Figure 85** Management > Remote MGMT > DNS

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 76** Management > Remote MGMT > DNS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Port	This field is read-only. This field displays the port number this service uses to access the ZyXEL Device. The computer must use the same port number.
Server Access	Select the interface(s) through which a computer may access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Secured Client IP Address	Select <b>All</b> to allow any computer to access the ZyXEL Device using this service. Select <b>Selected</b> to only allow the computer with the IP address that you specify to access the ZyXEL Device using this service.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 16.2.5 Security Screen

Use this screen to control how your ZyXEL Device responds to other types of requests. To access this screen, click **Management > Remote MGMT > Security**.

**Figure 86** Management > Remote MGMT > Security



Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 77** Management > Remote MGMT > Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Respond to Ping on	Select the interface(s) on which the ZyXEL Device should respond to incoming ping requests. <b>Disable</b> - the ZyXEL Device does not respond to any ping requests. <b>LAN</b> - the ZyXEL Device only responds to ping requests received from the LAN. <b>WAN</b> - the ZyXEL Device only responds to ping requests received from the WAN. <b>LAN &amp; WAN</b> - the ZyXEL Device responds to ping requests received from the LAN or the WAN.
Do not respond to requests for unauthorized services	Select this to prevent outsiders from discovering your ZyXEL Device by sending requests to unsupported port numbers. If an outside user attempts to probe an unsupported port on your ZyXEL Device, an ICMP response packet is automatically returned. This allows the outside user to know the ZyXEL Device exists. Your ZyXEL Device supports anti-probing, which prevents the ICMP response packet from being sent. This keeps outsiders from discovering your ZyXEL Device when unsupported ports are probed. If you clear this, your ZyXEL Device replies with an ICMP Port Unreachable packet for a port probe on unused UDP ports and with a TCP Reset packet for a port probe on unused TCP ports.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 17

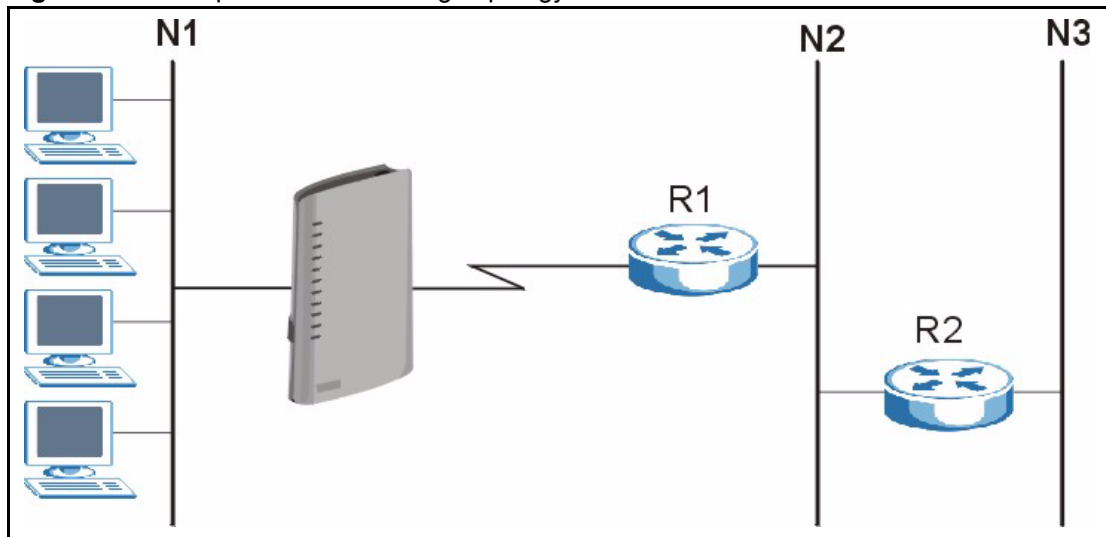
## Static Route

Use these screens to configure static routes in the ZyXEL Device.

### 17.1 Static Route Overview

Each remote node specifies only the network to which the gateway is directly connected, and the ZyXEL Device has no knowledge of the networks beyond. For instance, the ZyXEL Device knows about network N2 in the following figure through remote node Router 1. However, the ZyXEL Device is unable to route a packet to network N3 because it doesn't know that there is a route through the same remote node Router 1 (via gateway Router 2). The static routes are for you to tell the ZyXEL Device about the networks beyond the remote nodes.

**Figure 87** Example of Static Routing Topology



### 17.2 Static Route Screens

#### 17.2.1 IP Static Route Screen

Use this screen to look at static routes in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Management > Static Route > IP Static Route**.

**Note:** The first static route is the default route and cannot be modified or deleted.

**Figure 88** Management > Static Route > IP Static Route

The screenshot shows the 'IP Static Route' configuration page. At the top, there is a tab labeled 'IP Static Route'. Below it, the page title is 'Static Route Rules'. A table with the following columns is displayed: '#', 'Name', 'Active', 'Destination', 'Gateway', and 'Modify'. The table contains 8 rows, each representing a static route rule. The 'Active' column shows a '-' for all rules. The 'Destination' and 'Gateway' columns show '...'. The 'Modify' column contains two icons: a pencil (edit) and a trash can (delete).

#	Name	Active	Destination	Gateway	Modify
1	-	-	...	...	
2	-	-	...	...	
3	-	-	...	...	
4	-	-	...	...	
5	-	-	...	...	
6	-	-	...	...	
7	-	-	...	...	
8	-	-	...	...	

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 78** Management > Static Route > IP Static Route

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
#	This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific rule. The sequence is important, however. The ZyXEL Device checks each rule in order, and it only follows the first one that applies.
Name	This field displays the name that describes the static route.
Active	This field shows whether this static route is active ( <b>Yes</b> ) or not ( <b>No</b> ).
Destination	This field displays the destination IP address(es) that this static route affects.
Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the gateway to which the ZyXEL Device should send packets for the specified <b>Destination</b> . The gateway is a router or a switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
Modify	Use this field to edit or erase the static route. Click the <b>Edit</b> icon to open the <b>IP Static Route Edit</b> screen for this static route. Click the <b>Remove</b> icon to erase this static route.

## 17.2.2 IP Static Route Edit Screen

Use this screen to edit a static route in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click an **Edit** icon in **Management > Static Route > IP Static Route**.

**Figure 89** Management > Static Route > IP Static Route > Edit

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 79** Management > Static Route > IP Static Route > Edit

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Route Name	Enter the name of the static route.
Active	Select this if you want the static route to be used. Clear this if you do not want the static route to be used.
Private	Select this if you do not want the ZyXEL Device to tell other routers about this static route. For example, you might select this if the static route is in your LAN. Clear this if you want the ZyXEL Device to tell other routers about this static route.
Destination IP Address	Enter one of the destination IP addresses that this static route affects.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask that defines the range of destination IP addresses that this static route affects. If this static route affects only one IP address, enter 255.255.255.255.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway to which the ZyXEL Device should send packets for the specified <b>Destination</b> . The gateway is a router or a switch on the same network segment as the device's LAN or WAN port. The gateway helps forward packets to their destinations.
Metric	Usually, you should keep the default value. This field is related to RIP. See <a href="#">Chapter 7 on page 93</a> for more information. The metric represents the "cost of transmission". A router determines the best route for transmission by choosing a path with the lowest "cost". The smaller the metric, the lower the "cost". RIP uses hop count as the measurement of cost, where 1 is for a directly-connected network. The metric must be 1-15; if you use a value higher than 15, the routers assume the link is down.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Cancel	Click this to return to the previous screen without saving your changes.



# CHAPTER 18

## UPnP

Use this screen to set up UPnP.

### 18.1 Introducing Universal Plug and Play

Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) is a distributed, open networking standard that uses TCP/IP for simple peer-to-peer network connectivity between devices. A UPnP device can dynamically join a network, obtain an IP address, convey its capabilities and learn about other devices on the network. In turn, a device can leave a network smoothly and automatically when it is no longer in use.

#### 18.1.1 How do I know if I'm using UPnP?

UPnP hardware is identified as an icon in the Network Connections folder (Windows XP). Each UPnP compatible device installed on your network will appear as a separate icon. Selecting the icon of a UPnP device will allow you to access the information and properties of that device.

#### 18.1.2 NAT Traversal

UPnP NAT traversal automates the process of allowing an application to operate through NAT. UPnP network devices can automatically configure network addressing, announce their presence in the network to other UPnP devices and enable exchange of simple product and service descriptions. NAT traversal allows the following:

- Dynamic port mapping
- Learning public IP addresses
- Assigning lease times to mappings

Windows Messenger is an example of an application that supports NAT traversal and UPnP.

See [Chapter 8 on page 107](#) for further information about NAT.

#### 18.1.3 Cautions with UPnP

The automated nature of NAT traversal applications in establishing their own services and opening firewall ports may present network security issues. Network information and configuration may also be obtained and modified by users in some network environments.

All UPnP-enabled devices may communicate freely with each other without additional configuration. Disable UPnP if this is not your intention.

## 18.1.4 UPnP and ZyXEL

ZyXEL has achieved UPnP certification from the Universal Plug and Play Forum Creates UPnP™ Implementors Corp. (UIC). ZyXEL's UPnP implementation supports IGD 1.0 (Internet Gateway Device). At the time of writing ZyXEL's UPnP implementation supports Windows Messenger 4.6 and 4.7 while Windows Messenger 5.0 and Xbox are still being tested.

The ZyXEL Device only sends UPnP multicasts to the LAN.

See later sections for examples of installing UPnP in Windows XP and Windows Me as well as an example of using UPnP in Windows.

## 18.2 UPnP Examples

### 18.2.1 Installing UPnP in Windows Example

This section shows how to install UPnP in Windows Me and Windows XP.

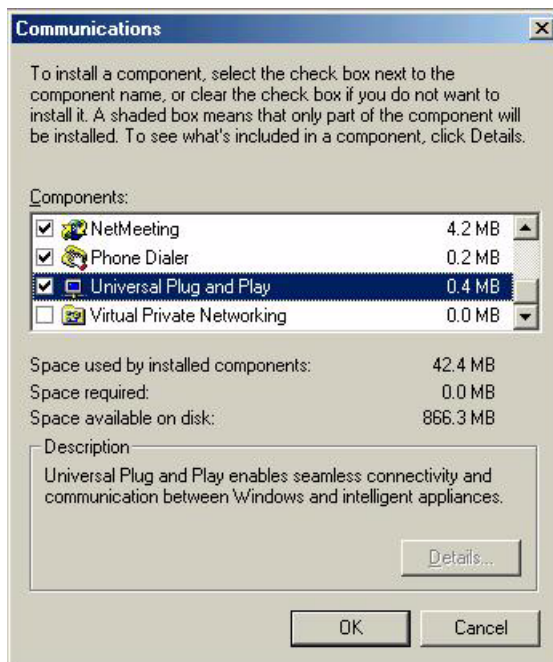
#### 18.2.1.1 Installing UPnP in Windows Me

Follow the steps below to install the UPnP in Windows Me.

- 1** Click **Start** and **Control Panel**. Double-click **Add/Remove Programs**.
- 2** Click on the **Windows Setup** tab and select **Communication** in the **Components** selection box. Click **Details**.

**Figure 90** Add/Remove Programs: Windows Setup: Communication

- 3 In the **Communications** window, select the **Universal Plug and Play** check box in the **Components** selection box.

**Figure 91** Add/Remove Programs: Windows Setup: Communication: Components

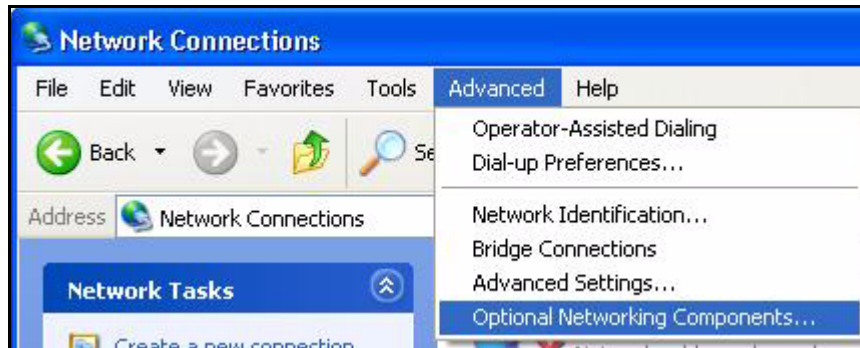
- 4 Click **OK** to go back to the **Add/Remove Programs Properties** window and click **Next**.
- 5 Restart the computer when prompted.

### 18.2.1.2 Installing UPnP in Windows XP

Follow the steps below to install the UPnP in Windows XP.

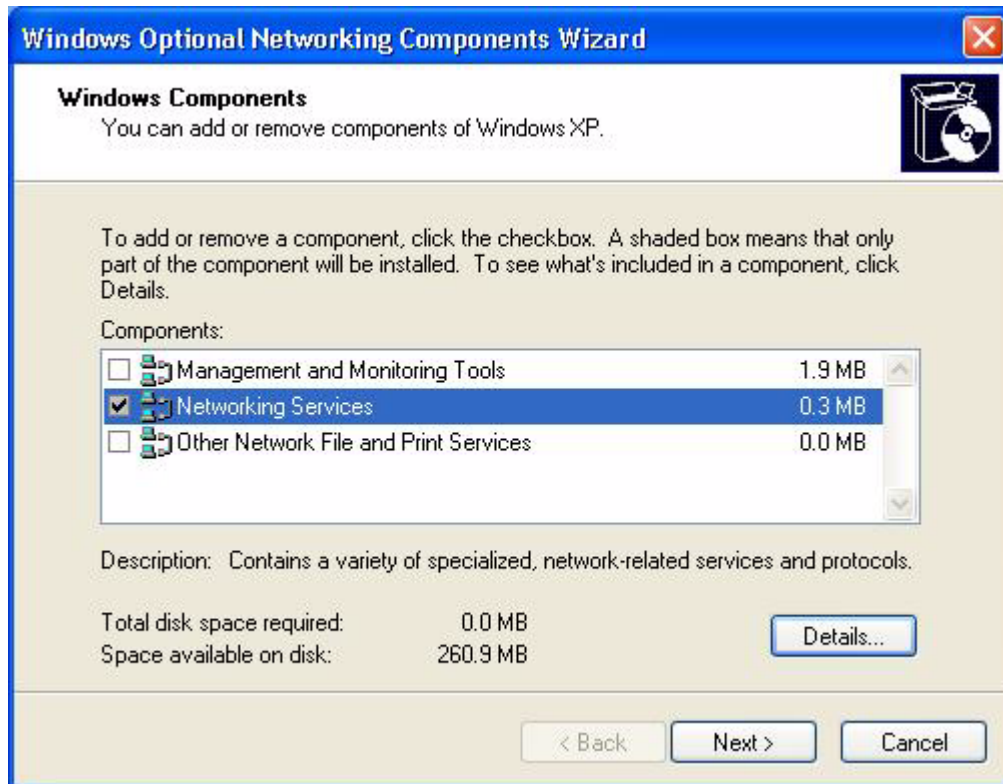
- 1 Click **Start** and **Control Panel**.
- 2 Double-click **Network Connections**.
- 3 In the **Network Connections** window, click **Advanced** in the main menu and select **Optional Networking Components ....**

**Figure 92** Network Connections

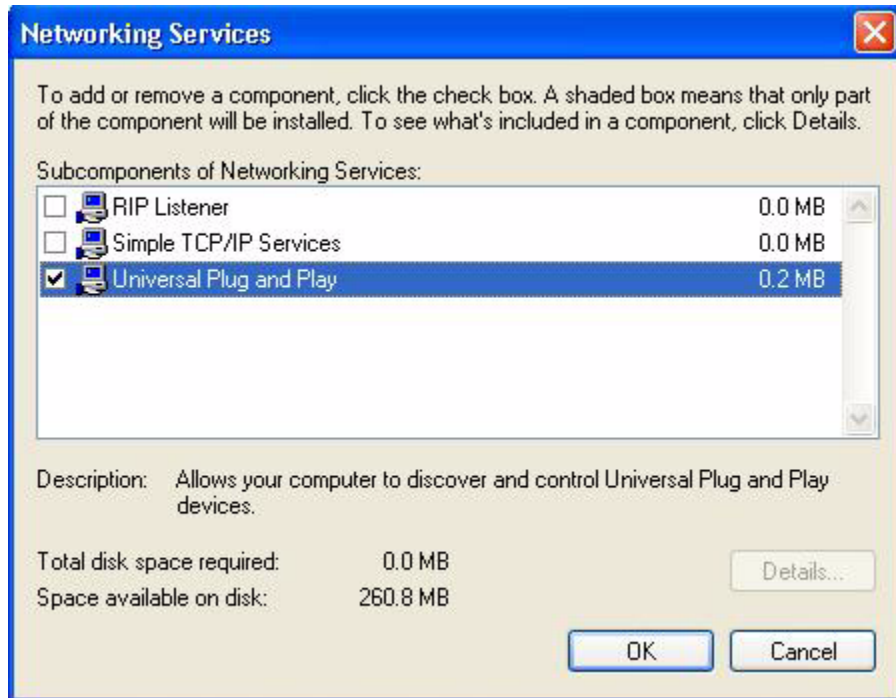


- 4 The **Windows Optional Networking Components Wizard** window displays. Select **Networking Service** in the **Components** selection box and click **Details**.



**Figure 93** Windows Optional Networking Components Wizard

**5** In the **Networking Services** window, select the **Universal Plug and Play** check box.

**Figure 94** Networking Services

- 6 Click **OK** to go back to the **Windows Optional Networking Component Wizard** window and click **Next**.

## 18.2.2 Using UPnP in Windows XP Example

This section shows you how to use the UPnP feature in Windows XP. You must already have UPnP installed in Windows XP and UPnP activated on the ZyXEL Device.

Make sure the computer is connected to a LAN port of the ZyXEL Device. Turn on your computer and the ZyXEL Device.

### 18.2.2.1 Auto-discover Your UPnP-enabled Network Device

- 1 Click **Start** and **Control Panel**. Double-click **Network Connections**. An icon displays under Internet Gateway.
- 2 Right-click the icon and select **Properties**.

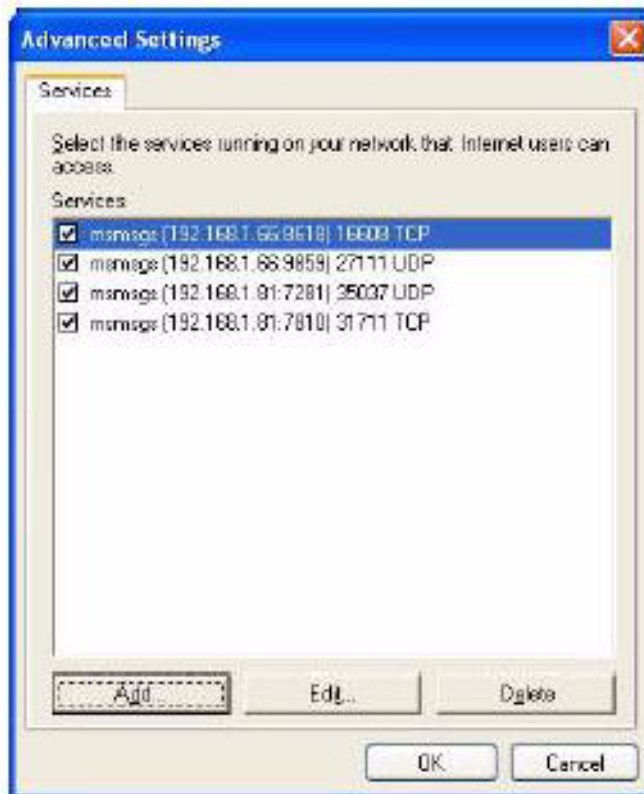
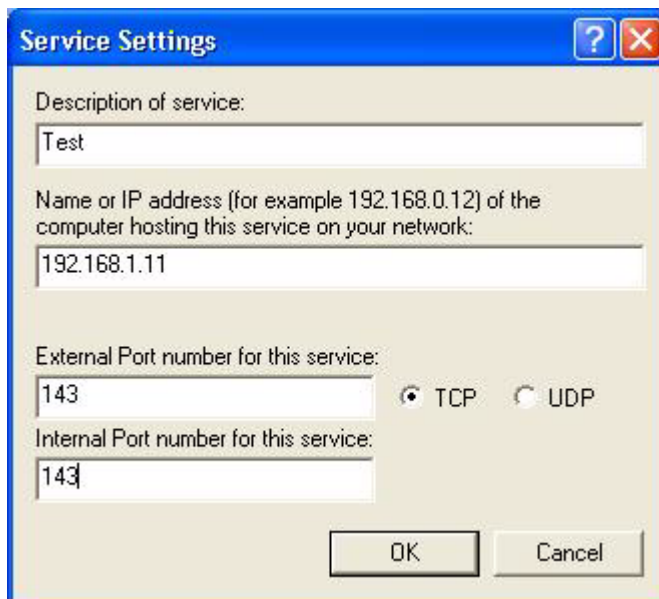
**Figure 95** Network Connections

- 3** In the **Internet Connection Properties** window, click **Settings** to see the port mappings there were automatically created.

**Figure 96** Internet Connection Properties



**4** You may edit or delete the port mappings or click **Add** to manually add port mappings.

**Figure 97** Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings**Figure 98** Internet Connection Properties: Advanced Settings: Add

- 5** When the UPnP-enabled device is disconnected from your computer, all port mappings will be deleted automatically.
- 6** Select **Show icon in notification area when connected** option and click **OK**. An icon displays in the system tray.

**Figure 99** System Tray Icon

- 7 Double-click on the icon to display your current Internet connection status.

**Figure 100** Internet Connection Status

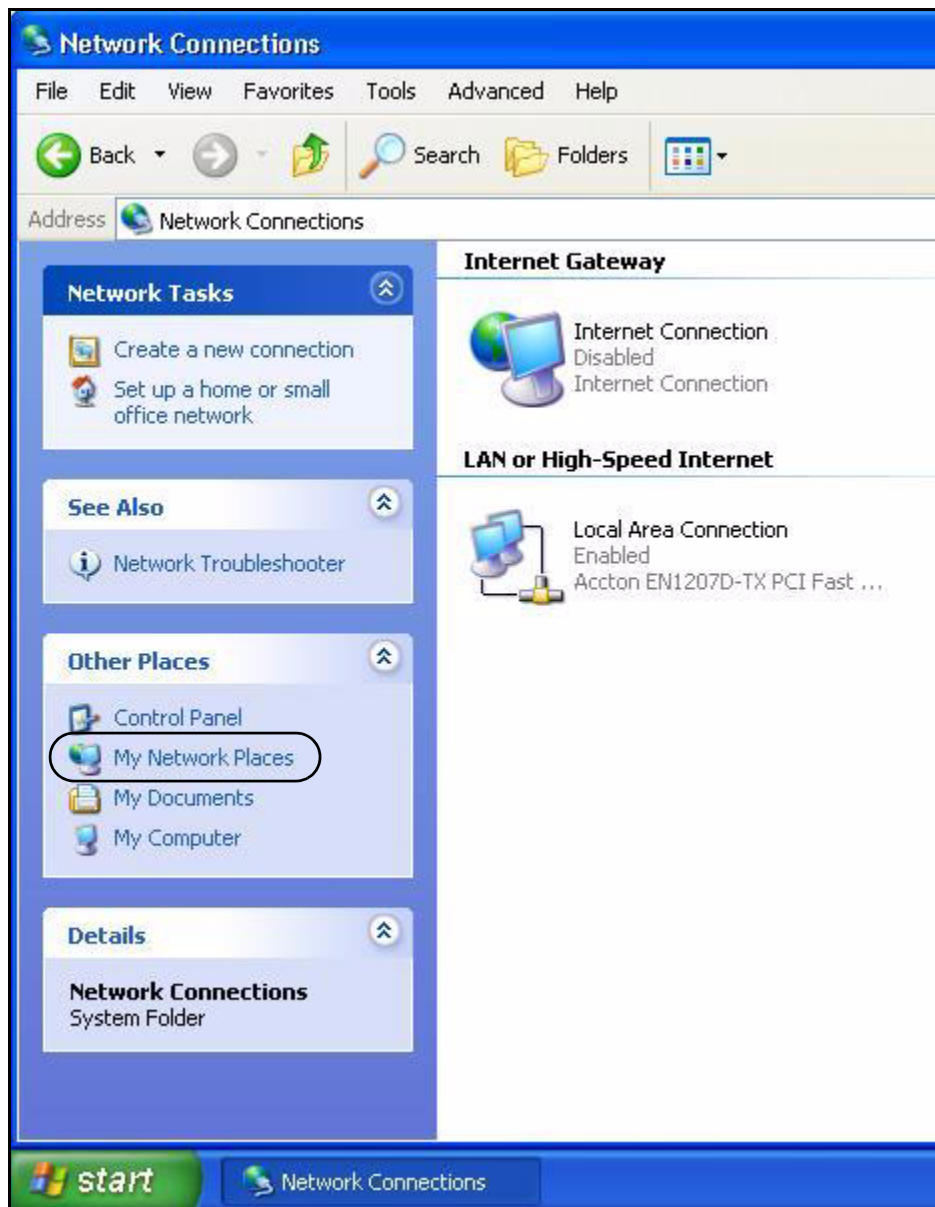
### 18.2.2.2 Web Configurator Easy Access

With UPnP, you can access the web-based configurator on the ZyXEL Device without finding out the IP address of the ZyXEL Device first. This comes helpful if you do not know the IP address of the ZyXEL Device.

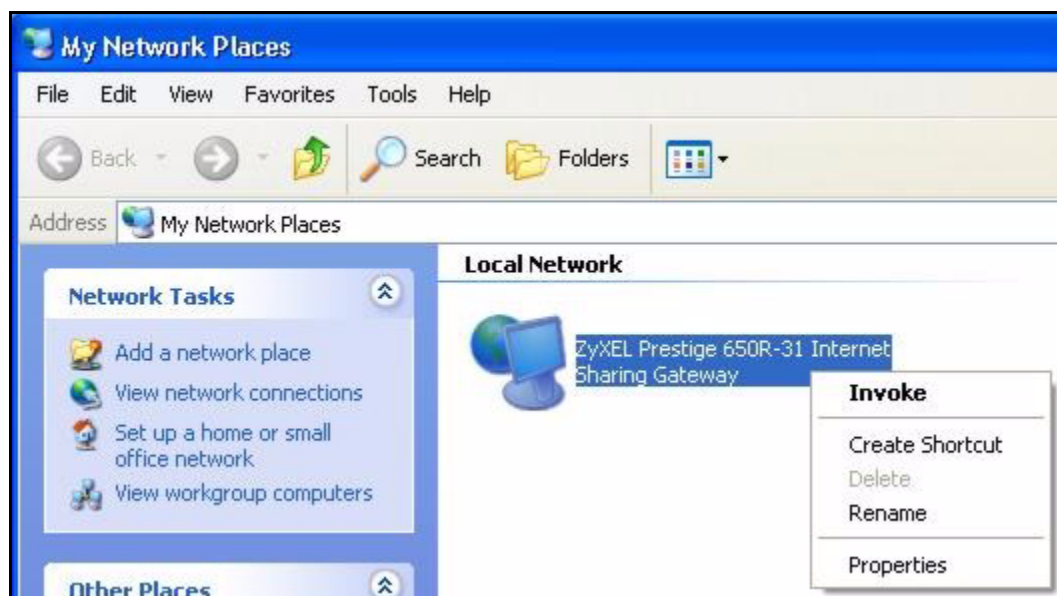
Follow the steps below to access the web configurator.

- 1 Click **Start** and then **Control Panel**.
- 2 Double-click **Network Connections**.
- 3 Select **My Network Places** under **Other Places**.

Figure 101 Network Connections



- 4 An icon with the description for each UPnP-enabled device displays under **Local Network**.
- 5 Right-click on the icon for your ZyXEL Device and select **Invoke**. The web configurator login screen displays.

**Figure 102** Network Connections: My Network Places

- 6 Right-click on the icon for your ZyXEL Device and select **Properties**. A properties window displays with basic information about the ZyXEL Device.



**Figure 103** Network Connections: My Network Places: Properties: Example

## 18.3 UPnP Screen

Use this screen to set up UPnP in your ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Management > UPnP**.

**Figure 104** Management > UPnP

**General**

**UPnP Setup**

Device Name: ZyXEL P-2302RL-P1 Internet Sharing Gateway

Enable the Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) Feature

Allow users to make configuration changes through UPnP

Allow UPnP to pass through Firewall

**Note:** For UPnP to function normally, the [HTTP](#) service must be available for LAN computers using UPnP.

-----

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 80** Management > UPnP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Device Name	This field identifies your device in UPnP applications.
Enable the Universal Plug and Play (UPnP) Feature	Select this to activate UPnP. Be aware that anyone could use a UPnP application to open the web configurator's login screen without entering the ZyXEL Device's IP address. You still have to enter the password, however.
Allow users to make configuration changes through UPnP	Select this to allow UPnP-enabled applications to automatically configure the ZyXEL Device so that they can communicate through the ZyXEL Device. For example, using NAT traversal, UPnP applications automatically reserve a NAT forwarding port in order to communicate with another UPnP enabled device; this eliminates the need to manually configure port forwarding for the UPnP enabled application.
Allow UPnP to pass through Firewall	Select this to allow traffic from UPnP-enabled applications to bypass the firewall. Clear this if you want the firewall to check UPnP application packets (for example, MSN packets).
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

# CHAPTER 19

## System

Use this screen to set up general system settings, change the system mode, change the password, configure the DDNS server settings, and set the current date and time.

### 19.1 System Features Overview

#### 19.1.1 System Name

**System Name** is for identification purposes. However, because some ISPs check this name you should enter your computer's "Computer Name".

- In Windows 95/98 click **Start, Settings, Control Panel, Network**. Click the **Identification** tab, note the entry for the **Computer Name** field and enter it as the **System Name**.
- In Windows 2000, click **Start, Settings** and **Control Panel** and then double-click **System**. Click the **Network Identification** tab and then the **Properties** button. Note the entry for the **Computer name** field and enter it as the **System Name**.
- In Windows XP, click **Start, My Computer, View system information** and then click the **Computer Name** tab. Note the entry in the **Full computer name** field and enter it as the ZyXEL Device **System Name**.

#### 19.1.2 Domain Name

The **Domain Name** entry is what is propagated to the DHCP clients on the LAN. If you leave this blank, the domain name obtained by DHCP from the ISP is used. While you must enter the host name (System Name) on each individual computer, the domain name can be assigned from the ZyXEL Device via DHCP.

#### 19.1.3 DNS Server Address Assignment

Use DNS (Domain Name System) to map a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa, for instance, the IP address of `www.zyxel.com` is `204.217.0.2`. The DNS server is extremely important because without it, you must know the IP address of a computer before you can access it.

The ZyXEL Device can get the DNS server addresses in the following ways.

- 1 The ISP tells you the DNS server addresses, usually in the form of an information sheet, when you sign up. If your ISP gives you DNS server addresses, enter them in the **DNS Server** fields in the **SYSTEM General** screen.
- 2 If the ISP did not give you DNS server information, leave the **DNS Server** fields in the **SYSTEM General** screen set to 0.0.0.0 for the ISP to dynamically assign the DNS server IP addresses.

### 19.1.4 Dynamic DNS

Dynamic DNS allows you to update your current dynamic IP address with one or many dynamic DNS services so that anyone can contact you (in NetMeeting, CU-SeeMe, etc.). You can also access your FTP server or Web site on your own computer using a domain name (for instance myhost.dhs.org, where myhost is a name of your choice) that will never change instead of using an IP address that changes each time you reconnect. Your friends or relatives will always be able to call you even if they don't know your IP address.

First of all, you need to have registered a dynamic DNS account with [www.dyndns.org](http://www.dyndns.org). This is for people with a dynamic IP from their ISP or DHCP server that would still like to have a domain name. The Dynamic DNS service provider will give you a password or key.

Enabling the wildcard feature for your host causes \*.yourhost.dyndns.org to be aliased to the same IP address as yourhost.dyndns.org. This feature is useful if you want to be able to use, for example, [www.yourhost.dyndns.org](http://www.yourhost.dyndns.org) and still reach your hostname.

**Note:** If you have a private WAN IP address, then you cannot use Dynamic DNS.

### 19.1.5 Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List

The ZyXEL Device uses the following pre-defined list of NTP time servers if you do not specify a time server or it cannot synchronize with the time server you specified.

**Note:** The ZyXEL Device can use this pre-defined list of time servers regardless of the Time Protocol you select.

When the ZyXEL Device uses the pre-defined list of NTP time servers, it randomly selects one server and tries to synchronize with it. If the synchronization fails, then the ZyXEL Device goes through the rest of the list in order from the first one tried until either it is successful or all the pre-defined NTP time servers have been tried.

**Table 81** Pre-defined NTP Time Servers

ntp1.cs.wisc.edu
ntp1.gbg.netnod.se
ntp2.cs.wisc.edu
tock.usno.navy.mil
ntp3.cs.wisc.edu
ntp.cs.strath.ac.uk

**Table 81** Pre-defined NTP Time Servers

ntp1.sp.se
time1.stupi.se
tick.stdtime.gov.tw
tock.stdtime.gov.tw
time.stdtime.gov.tw

## 19.1.6 Resetting the Time

The ZyXEL Device resets the time in the following instances:

- When the ZyXEL Device starts up.
- When you click **Apply** in the [Time Setting Screen](#).
- 24-hour intervals after starting.

## 19.2 System Screens

### 19.2.1 General System Screen

Use this screen to change the ZyXEL Device's mode, set up the ZyXEL Device's system name, domain name, idle timeout, and administrator password. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > System > General**.

**Figure 105** Maintenance > System > General

The screenshot shows the 'General' tab of the 'Maintenance > System > General' configuration page. It is divided into two sections: 'System Setup' and 'Password Setup'.  
**System Setup:**  
 - Mode: Radio buttons for 'Router' (selected) and 'Bridge'.  
 - System Name: Text box containing 'P2302RLP1'.  
 - Domain Name: Empty text box.  
 - Administrator Inactivity Timer: Text box containing '5', with '(minutes, 0 means no timeout)' to its right.  
 - Management IP Address: Text box containing '0.0.0.0'.  
 - Note: A yellow note icon followed by text: '1.If change to Bridge mode, the system will automatic to disable firewall and NAT. 2.If chnage to Bridge mode, Please set Management IP Address'.  
**Password Setup:**  
 - Old Password: Text box with '\*\*\*\*'.  
 - New Password: Text box with '\*\*\*\*'.  
 - Retype to Confirm: Text box with '\*\*\*\*'.  
 - At the bottom are 'Apply' and 'Reset' buttons.

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 82** Maintenance > System > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Setup	
Mode	<p>The ZyXEL Device supports two modes, <b>Router</b> and <b>Bridge</b>. Usually, you should use <b>Router</b> mode because it supports all the features discussed in this User's Guide. However, you might use <b>Bridge</b> mode in the following situation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is another router in the network; <i>and</i></li> <li>• You only want to use the ZyXEL Device for VoIP and Internet access. You do not want to use other features, such as the firewall, even with their default settings.</li> </ul> <p>See <a href="#">Chapter 4 on page 69</a> for more information about <b>Bridge</b> mode.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If you change this setting and then click <b>Apply</b>, the device automatically restarts. After the restart, the IP Address of the ZyXEL Device (LAN port) depends on the mode. If the ZyXEL Device is in <b>Router</b> mode, use the <b>IP Address in Network &gt; LAN &gt; IP</b>. If the ZyXEL Device is in <b>Bridge</b> mode, use the <b>Management IP Address</b> in this screen.</p>
System Name	<p>Enter your computer's "Computer Name". This is for identification purposes, but some ISPs also check this field. This name can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters long. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and underscores "_" are accepted.</p>
Domain Name	<p>Enter the domain name entry that is propagated to DHCP clients on the LAN. If you leave this blank, the domain name obtained from the ISP is used. Use up to 38 alphanumeric characters. Spaces are not allowed, but dashes "-" and periods "." are accepted.</p>

**Table 82** Maintenance > System > General

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator Inactivity Timer	Enter the number of minutes a management session can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out, you have to log in again. A value of "0" means a management session never times out, no matter how long it has been left idle. This is not recommended. Long idle timeouts may have security risks. The default is five minutes.
Management IP Address	Enter the IP address you want to use to access the ZyXEL Device when it is in <b>Bridge</b> mode.
Password Setup	
Old Password	Enter the current password you use to access the ZyXEL Device.
New Password	Enter the new password for the ZyXEL Device. You can use up to 30 characters. As you type the password, the screen displays an asterisk (*) for each character you type.
Retype to Verify	Type the new password again.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 19.2.2 Dynamic DNS Screen

Use this screen to set up the ZyXEL Device as a dynamic DNS client. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > System > Dynamic DNS**.

**Figure 106** Maintenance > System > Dynamic DNS

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 83** Maintenance > System > Dynamic DNS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dynamic DNS Setup	
Enable Dynamic DNS	Select this to use dynamic DNS.
Service Provider	Select the name of your Dynamic DNS service provider.
Dynamic DNS Type	Select the type of service that you are registered for from your Dynamic DNS service provider.
Host Name	Enter the host name. You can specify up to two host names, separated by a comma (",").
User Name	Enter your user name.
Password	Enter the password assigned to you.
Enable Wildcard Option	Select this to enable the DynDNS Wildcard feature.
Enable offline option	This field is available when <b>CustomDNS</b> is selected in the <b>DDNS Type</b> field. Select this if your Dynamic DNS service provider redirects traffic to a URL that you can specify while you are off line. Check with your Dynamic DNS service provider.
IP Address Update Policy	
Use WAN IP Address	Select this if you want the ZyXEL Device to update the domain name with the WAN port's IP address.



**Table 83** Maintenance > System > Dynamic DNS

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Dynamic DNS server auto detect IP address	Select this if you want the DDNS server to update the IP address of the host name(s) automatically. Select this option when there are one or more NAT routers between the ZyXEL Device and the DDNS server.  <b>Note:</b> The DDNS server may not be able to detect the proper IP address if there is an HTTP proxy server between the ZyXEL Device and the DDNS server.
Use specified IP address	Select this if you want to use the specified IP address with the host name(s). Then, specify the IP address. Use this option if you have a static IP address.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

### 19.2.3 Time Setting Screen

Use this screen to set the date, time, and time zone in the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > System > Time Setting**.

**Figure 107** Maintenance > System > Time Setting

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 84** Maintenance > System > Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current Time and Date	This section displays the current date and time.
Time and Date Setup	
Manual	Select this if you want to specify the current date and time in the fields below.
New Time	Enter the new time in this field, and click <b>Apply</b> .
New Date	Enter the new date in this field, and click <b>Apply</b> .
Get from Time Server	Select this if you want to use a time server to update the current date and time in the ZyXEL Device.
Time Protocol	Select the time service protocol that your time server uses. Check with your ISP or network administrator, or use trial-and-error to find a protocol that works. <b>Daytime (RFC 867)</b> - This format is day/month/year/time zone. <b>Time (RFC 868)</b> - This format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. <b>NTP (RFC 1305)</b> - This format is similar to Time (RFC 868).
Time Server Address	Enter the IP address or URL of your time server. Check with your ISP or network administrator if you are unsure of this information.
Time Zone Setup	
Time Zone	Select the time zone at your location.

**Table 84** Maintenance > System > Time Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Daylight Savings	Select this if your location uses daylight savings time. Daylight savings is a period from late spring to early fall when many places set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.
Start Date	Enter which hour on which day of which week of which month daylight-savings time starts.
End Date	Enter which hour on the which day of which week of which month daylight-savings time ends.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.



# CHAPTER 20

## Logs

Use these screens to look at log entries and alerts and to configure the ZyXEL Device's log and alert settings.

### 20.1 Logs Overview

For a list of log messages, see [Section 20.3 on page 215](#).

#### 20.1.1 Alerts

An alert is a type of log that warrants more serious attention. Some categories such as **System Errors** consist of both logs and alerts.

## 20.1.2 Syslog Logs

There are two types of syslog: event logs and traffic logs. The device generates an event log when a system event occurs, for example, when a user logs in or the device is under attack. The device generates a traffic log when a "session" is terminated. A traffic log summarizes the session's type, when it started and stopped the amount of traffic that was sent and received and so on. An external log analyzer can reconstruct and analyze the traffic flowing through the device after collecting the traffic logs.

**Table 85** Syslog Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Event Log: <Facility*8 + Severity>Mon dd hr:mm:ss hostname src="<srcIP:srcPort>" dst="<dstIP:dstPort>" msg="<msg>" note="<note>" devID="<mac address>" cat="<category>"	This message is sent by the system ("RAS" displays as the system name if you haven't configured one) when the router generates a syslog. The facility is defined in the <b>Log Settings</b> screen. The severity is the log's syslog class. The definition of messages and notes are defined in the various log charts throughout this appendix. The "devID" is the MAC address of the router's LAN port. The "cat" is the same as the category in the router's logs.
Traffic Log: <Facility*8 + Severity>Mon dd hr:mm:ss hostname src="<srcIP:srcPort>" dst="<dstIP:dstPort>" msg="Traffic Log" note="Traffic Log" devID="<mac address>" cat="Traffic Log" duration=seconds sent=sentBytes rcvd=receiveBytes dir="<from:to>" protoID=IPProtocolID proto="serviceName" trans="IPSec/ Normal"	This message is sent by the device when the connection (session) is closed. The facility is defined in the Log Settings screen. The severity is the traffic log type. The message and note always display "Traffic Log". The "proto" field lists the service name. The "dir" field lists the incoming and outgoing interfaces ("LAN:LAN", "LAN:WAN", "LAN:DEV" for example).

The following table shows RFC-2408 ISAKMP payload types that the log displays. Please refer to the RFC for detailed information on each type.

**Table 86** RFC-2408 ISAKMP Payload Types

LOG DISPLAY	PAYLOAD TYPE
SA	Security Association
PROP	Proposal
TRANS	Transform
KE	Key Exchange
ID	Identification
CER	Certificate
CER_REQ	Certificate Request
HASH	Hash
SIG	Signature
NONCE	Nonce
NOTFY	Notification

**Table 86** RFC-2408 ISAKMP Payload Types (continued)

LOG DISPLAY	PAYLOAD TYPE
DEL	Delete
VID	Vendor ID

## 20.2 Logs Screens

### 20.2.1 Log Viewer Screen

Use this screen to look at log entries and alerts. Alerts are written in red. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Logs > View Log**.

**Figure 108** Maintenance > Logs > View Log

The screenshot shows the 'View Log' screen with a 'Log Settings' tab. Below the tabs, there is a 'Display:' dropdown menu set to 'All Logs', and three buttons: 'Email Log Now', 'Refresh', and 'Clear Log'. The main content is a table with the following data:

#	Time	Message	Source	Destination	Note
1	01/01/2000 00:14:04	Successful WEB login	192.168.1.33		User:admin
2	01/01/2000 00:02:02	Successful WEB login	192.168.1.33		User:admin
3	01/01/2000 00:01:43	DHCP server assigns 192.168.1.33 to tw11477-02			
4	01/01/2000 00:01:40	DHCP server assigns 192.168.1.33 to tw11477-02			
5	01/01/2000 00:01:37	DHCP server assigns 192.168.1.33 to tw11477-02			

Click a column header to sort log entries in descending (later-to-earlier) order. Click again to sort in ascending order. The small triangle next to a column header indicates how the table is currently sorted (pointing downward is descending; pointing upward is ascending). Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 87** Maintenance > Logs > View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Display	Select a category whose log entries you want to view. To view all logs, select <b>All Logs</b> . The list of categories depends on what log categories are selected in the <b>Log Settings</b> page.
Email Log Now	Click this to send the log screen to the e-mail address specified in the <b>Log Settings</b> page.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to renew the log screen.
Clear Log	Click <b>Clear Log</b> to clear all the log entries, regardless of what is shown on the log screen.
#	This field is a sequential value, and it is not associated with a specific log entry.
Time	This field displays the time the log was recorded.

**Table 87** Maintenance > Logs > View Log

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Message	This field displays the reason for the log. See <a href="#">Section 20.3 on page 215</a> .
Source	This field displays the source IP address and the port number of the incoming packet. In many cases, some or all of this information may not be available.
Destination	This field lists the destination IP address and the port number of the incoming packet. In many cases, some or all of this information may not be available.
Note	This field displays additional information about the log entry.

## 20.2.2 Log Settings Screen

Use this screen to configure where the ZyXEL Device sends logs and alerts, the schedule for sending logs, and which logs and alerts are sent or recorded.

To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Logs > Log Settings**.



**Figure 109** Maintenance > Logs > Log Settings

Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 88** Maintenance > Logs > Log Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
E-mail Log Settings	
Mail Server	Enter the server name or the IP address of the mail server the ZyXEL Device should use to e-mail logs and alerts. Leave this field blank if you do not want to send logs or alerts by e-mail.
Mail Subject	Enter the subject line used in e-mail messages the ZyXEL Device sends.
Send Log to	Enter the e-mail address to which log entries are sent by e-mail. Leave this field blank if you do not want to send logs by e-mail.

**Table 88** Maintenance > Logs > Log Settings

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Send Alerts to	Enter the e-mail address to which alerts are sent by e-mail. Leave this field blank if you do not want to send alerts by e-mail.
Log Schedule	<p>Select the frequency with which the ZyXEL Device should send log messages by e-mail.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Daily</li> <li>• Weekly</li> <li>• Hourly</li> <li>• When Log is Full</li> <li>• None.</li> </ul> <p>If the <b>Weekly</b> or the <b>Daily</b> option is selected, specify a time of day when the E-mail should be sent. If the <b>Weekly</b> option is selected, then also specify which day of the week the E-mail should be sent. If the <b>When Log is Full</b> option is selected, an alert is sent when the log fills up. If you select <b>None</b>, no log messages are sent.</p>
Day for Sending Log	This field is only available when you select <b>Weekly</b> in the <b>Log Schedule</b> field. Select which day of the week to send the logs.
Time for Sending Log	<p>This field is only available when you select <b>Daily</b> or <b>Weekly</b> in the <b>Log Schedule</b> field.</p> <p>Enter the time of day in 24-hour format (for example 23:00 equals 11:00 pm) to send the logs.</p>
Clear log after sending mail	Select this to clear all logs and alert messages after logs are sent by e-mail.
Syslog Logging	Syslog logging sends a log to an external syslog server used to store logs.
Active	Select this to enable syslog logging.
Syslog Server IP Address	Enter the server name or IP address of the syslog server that logs the selected categories of logs.
Log Facility	Select a location. The log facility allows you to log the messages in different files in the syslog server. See the documentation of your syslog for more details.
Active Log and Alert	
Log	Select the categories of logs that you want to record.
Send immediate alert	Select the categories of alerts that you want the ZyXEL Device to send immediately.
Apply	Click this to save your changes and to apply them to the ZyXEL Device.
Reset	Click this to set every field in this screen to its last-saved value.

## 20.3 Log Message Descriptions

The following tables provide descriptions of example log messages.

**Table 89** System Error Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
WAN connection is down.	The WAN connection is down. You cannot access the network through this interface.
%s exceeds the max. number of session per host!	This attempt to create a NAT session exceeds the maximum number of NAT session table entries allowed to be created per host.

**Table 90** System Maintenance Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Time calibration is successful	The device has adjusted its time based on information from the time server.
Time calibration failed	The device failed to get information from the time server.
WAN interface gets IP: %s	The WAN interface got a new IP address from the DHCP or PPPoE server.
DHCP client gets %s	A DHCP client got a new IP address from the DHCP server.
DHCP client IP expired	A DHCP client's IP address has expired.
DHCP server assigns %s	The DHCP server assigned an IP address to a client.
Successful WEB login	Someone has logged on to the device's web configurator interface.
WEB login failed	Someone has failed to log on to the device's web configurator interface.
TELNET Login Successfully	Someone has logged on to the router via telnet.
TELNET Login Fail	Someone has failed to log on to the router via telnet.
Successful FTP login	Someone has logged on to the device via ftp.
FTP login failed	Someone has failed to log on to the device via ftp.
NAT Session Table is Full!	The maximum number of NAT session table entries has been exceeded and the table is full.
Time initialized by Daytime Server	The device got the time and date from the Daytime server.
Time initialized by Time server	The device got the time and date from the time server.
Time initialized by NTP server	The device got the time and date from the NTP server.
Connect to Daytime server fail	The device was not able to connect to the Daytime server.
Connect to Time server fail	The device was not able to connect to the Time server.
Connect to NTP server fail	The device was not able to connect to the NTP server.

**Table 90** System Maintenance Logs (continued)

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Too large ICMP packet has been dropped	The device dropped an ICMP packet that was too large.
Configuration Change: PC = 0x%x, Task ID = 0x%x	The device is saving configuration changes.

**Table 91** Access Control Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Firewall default policy: [ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ] <Packet Direction>	Attempted TCP/UDP/IGMP/ESP/GRE/OSPF access matched the default policy and was blocked or forwarded according to the default policy's setting.
Firewall rule [NOT] match:[ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ] <Packet Direction>, <rule:%d>	Attempted TCP/UDP/IGMP/ESP/GRE/OSPF access matched (or did not match) a configured firewall rule (denoted by its number) and was blocked or forwarded according to the rule.
Triangle route packet forwarded: [ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ]	The firewall allowed a triangle route session to pass through.
Packet without a NAT table entry blocked: [ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ]	The router blocked a packet that didn't have a corresponding NAT table entry.
Router sent blocked web site message: TCP	The router sent a message to notify a user that the router blocked access to a web site that the user requested.
Exceed maximum sessions per host (%d).	The device blocked a session because the host's connections exceeded the maximum sessions per host.
Firewall allowed a packet that matched a NAT session: [ TCP   UDP ]	A packet from the WAN (TCP or UDP) matched a cone NAT session and the device forwarded it to the LAN.

**Table 92** TCP Reset Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Under SYN flood attack, sent TCP RST	The router sent a TCP reset packet when a host was under a SYN flood attack (the TCP incomplete count is per destination host.)
Exceed TCP MAX incomplete, sent TCP RST	The router sent a TCP reset packet when the number of TCP incomplete connections exceeded the user configured threshold. (the TCP incomplete count is per destination host.)
Peer TCP state out of order, sent TCP RST	The router sent a TCP reset packet when a TCP connection state was out of order. Note: The firewall refers to RFC793 Figure 6 to check the TCP state.

**Table 92** TCP Reset Logs (continued)

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Firewall session time out, sent TCP RST	The router sent a TCP reset packet when a dynamic firewall session timed out. The default timeout values are as follows: ICMP idle timeout: 3 minutes UDP idle timeout: 3 minutes TCP connection (three way handshaking) timeout: 270 seconds TCP FIN-wait timeout: 2 MSL (Maximum Segment Lifetime set in the TCP header). TCP idle (established) timeout (s): 150 minutes TCP reset timeout: 10 seconds
Exceed MAX incomplete, sent TCP RST	The router sent a TCP reset packet when the number of incomplete connections (TCP and UDP) exceeded the user-configured threshold. (Incomplete count is for all TCP and UDP connections through the firewall.)Note: When the number of incomplete connections (TCP + UDP) > "Maximum Incomplete High", the router sends TCP RST packets for TCP connections and destroys TOS (firewall dynamic sessions) until incomplete connections < "Maximum Incomplete Low".
Access block, sent TCP RST	The router sends a TCP RST packet and generates this log if you turn on the firewall TCP reset mechanism (via CLI command: <code>sys firewall tcprst</code> ).

**Table 93** Packet Filter Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
[ TCP   UDP   ICMP   IGMP   Generic ] packet filter matched (set: %d, rule: %d)	Attempted access matched a configured filter rule (denoted by its set and rule number) and was blocked or forwarded according to the rule.

For type and code details, see [Table 101 on page 221](#).

**Table 94** ICMP Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Firewall default policy: ICMP <Packet Direction>, <type:%d>, <code:%d>	ICMP access matched the default policy and was blocked or forwarded according to the user's setting.
Firewall rule [NOT] match: ICMP <Packet Direction>, <rule:%d>, <type:%d>, <code:%d>	ICMP access matched (or didn't match) a firewall rule (denoted by its number) and was blocked or forwarded according to the rule.
Triangle route packet forwarded: ICMP	The firewall allowed a triangle route session to pass through.
Packet without a NAT table entry blocked: ICMP	The router blocked a packet that didn't have a corresponding NAT table entry.

**Table 94** ICMP Logs (continued)

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Unsupported/out-of-order ICMP: ICMP	The firewall does not support this kind of ICMP packets or the ICMP packets are out of order.
Router reply ICMP packet: ICMP	The router sent an ICMP reply packet to the sender.

**Table 95** CDR Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
board %d line %d channel %d, call %d, %s C01 Outgoing Call dev=%x ch=%x %s	The router received the setup requirements for a call. "call" is the reference (count) number of the call. "dev" is the device type (3 is for dial-up, 6 is for PPPoE). "channel" or "ch" is the call channel ID. For example, "board 0 line 0 channel 0, call 3, C01 Outgoing Call dev=6 ch=0" Means the router has dialed to the PPPoE server 3 times.
board %d line %d channel %d, call %d, %s C02 OutCall Connected %d %s	The PPPoE or dial-up call is connected.
board %d line %d channel %d, call %d, %s C02 Call Terminated	The PPPoE or dial-up call was disconnected.

**Table 96** PPP Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
ppp:LCP Starting	The PPP connection's Link Control Protocol stage has started.
ppp:LCP Opening	The PPP connection's Link Control Protocol stage is opening.
ppp:CHAP Opening	The PPP connection's Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol stage is opening.
ppp:IPCP Starting	The PPP connection's Internet Protocol Control Protocol stage is starting.
ppp:IPCP Opening	The PPP connection's Internet Protocol Control Protocol stage is opening.
ppp:LCP Closing	The PPP connection's Link Control Protocol stage is closing.
ppp:IPCP Closing	The PPP connection's Internet Protocol Control Protocol stage is closing.

**Table 97** UPnP Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
UPnP pass through Firewall	UPnP packets can pass through the firewall.

**Table 98** Content Filtering Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
%s: Keyword blocking	The content of a requested web page matched a user defined keyword.
%s: Not in trusted web list	The web site is not in a trusted domain, and the router blocks all traffic except trusted domain sites.
%s: Forbidden Web site	The web site is in the forbidden web site list.
%s: Contains ActiveX	The web site contains ActiveX.
%s: Contains Java applet	The web site contains a Java applet.
%s: Contains cookie	The web site contains a cookie.
%s: Proxy mode detected	The router detected proxy mode in the packet.
%s: Trusted Web site	The web site is in a trusted domain.
%s	When the content filter is not on according to the time schedule.
Waiting content filter server timeout	The external content filtering server did not respond within the timeout period.
DNS resolving failed	The ZyXEL Device cannot get the IP address of the external content filtering via DNS query.
Creating socket failed	The ZyXEL Device cannot issue a query because TCP/IP socket creation failed, port:port number.
Connecting to content filter server fail	The connection to the external content filtering server failed.
License key is invalid	The external content filtering license key is invalid.

For type and code details, see [Table 101 on page 221](#).

**Table 99** Attack Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
attack [ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ]	The firewall detected a TCP/UDP/IGMP/ESP/GRE/OSPF attack.
attack ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall detected an ICMP attack.
land [ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ]	The firewall detected a TCP/UDP/IGMP/ESP/GRE/OSPF land attack.
land ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall detected an ICMP land attack.
ip spoofing - WAN [ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ]	The firewall detected an IP spoofing attack on the WAN port.
ip spoofing - WAN ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall detected an ICMP IP spoofing attack on the WAN port.
icmp echo : ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall detected an ICMP echo attack.

**Table 99** Attack Logs (continued)

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
syn flood TCP	The firewall detected a TCP syn flood attack.
ports scan TCP	The firewall detected a TCP port scan attack.
teardrop TCP	The firewall detected a TCP teardrop attack.
teardrop UDP	The firewall detected an UDP teardrop attack.
teardrop ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall detected an ICMP teardrop attack.
illegal command TCP	The firewall detected a TCP illegal command attack.
NetBIOS TCP	The firewall detected a TCP NetBIOS attack.
ip spoofing - no routing entry [ TCP   UDP   IGMP   ESP   GRE   OSPF ]	The firewall classified a packet with no source routing entry as an IP spoofing attack.
ip spoofing - no routing entry ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall classified an ICMP packet with no source routing entry as an IP spoofing attack.
vulnerability ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall detected an ICMP vulnerability attack.
traceroute ICMP (type:%d, code:%d)	The firewall detected an ICMP traceroute attack.
ports scan UDP	The firewall detected a UDP port scan attack.
Firewall sent TCP packet in response to DoS attack TCP	The firewall sent TCP packet in response to a DoS attack
ICMP Source Quench ICMP	The firewall detected an ICMP Source Quench attack.
ICMP Time Exceed ICMP	The firewall detected an ICMP Time Exceed attack.
ICMP Destination Unreachable ICMP	The firewall detected an ICMP Destination Unreachable attack.
ping of death. ICMP	The firewall detected an ICMP ping of death attack.
smurf ICMP	The firewall detected an ICMP smurf attack.

**Table 100** Remote Management Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Remote Management: FTP denied	Attempted use of FTP service was blocked according to remote management settings.
Remote Management: TELNET denied	Attempted use of TELNET service was blocked according to remote management settings.
Remote Management: HTTP or UPnP denied	Attempted use of HTTP or UPnP service was blocked according to remote management settings.
Remote Management: WWW denied	Attempted use of WWW service was blocked according to remote management settings.
Remote Management: HTTPS denied	Attempted use of HTTPS service was blocked according to remote management settings.



**Table 100** Remote Management Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Remote Management: SSH denied	Attempted use of SSH service was blocked according to remote management settings.
Remote Management: ICMP Ping response denied	Attempted use of ICMP service was blocked according to remote management settings.
Remote Management: DNS denied	Attempted use of DNS service was blocked according to remote management settings.

**Table 101** ICMP Notes

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
0		Echo Reply
	0	Echo reply message
3		Destination Unreachable
	0	Net unreachable
	1	Host unreachable
	2	Protocol unreachable
	3	Port unreachable
	4	A packet that needed fragmentation was dropped because it was set to Don't Fragment (DF)
	5	Source route failed
4		Source Quench
	0	A gateway may discard internet datagrams if it does not have the buffer space needed to queue the datagrams for output to the next network on the route to the destination network.
5		Redirect
	0	Redirect datagrams for the Network
	1	Redirect datagrams for the Host
	2	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Network
	3	Redirect datagrams for the Type of Service and Host
8		Echo
	0	Echo message
11		Time Exceeded
	0	Time to live exceeded in transit
	1	Fragment reassembly time exceeded
12		Parameter Problem
	0	Pointer indicates the error
13		Timestamp
	0	Timestamp request message
14		Timestamp Reply

**Table 101** ICMP Notes (continued)

TYPE	CODE	DESCRIPTION
	0	Timestamp reply message
15		Information Request
	0	Information request message
16		Information Reply
	0	Information reply message

**Table 102** SIP Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
SIP Registration Success by SIP:SIP Phone Number	The listed SIP account was successfully registered with a SIP register server.
SIP Registration Fail by SIP:SIP Phone Number	An attempt to register the listed SIP account with a SIP register server was not successful.
SIP UnRegistration Success by SIP:SIP Phone Number	The listed SIP account's registration was deleted from the SIP register server.
SIP UnRegistration Fail by SIP:SIP Phone Number	An attempt to delete the listed SIP account's registration from the SIP register server failed.

**Table 103** RTP Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
Error, RTP init fail	The initialization of an RTP session failed.
Error, Call fail: RTP connect fail	A VoIP phone call failed because the RTP session could not be established.
Error, RTP connection cannot close	The termination of an RTP session failed.

**Table 104** FSM Logs: Caller Side

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
VoIP Call Start Ph[Phone Port Number] <- Outgoing Call Number	Someone used a phone connected to the listed phone port to initiate a VoIP call to the listed destination.
VoIP Call Established Ph[Phone Port] -> Outgoing Call Number	Someone used a phone connected to the listed phone port to make a VoIP call to the listed destination.
VoIP Call End Phone[Phone Port]	A VoIP phone call made from a phone connected to the listed phone port has terminated.

**Table 105** FSM Logs: Callee Side

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
VoIP Call Start from SIP[SIP Port Number]	A VoIP phone call came to the ZyXEL Device from the listed SIP number.
VoIP Call Established Ph[Phone Port] <- Outgoing Call Number	A VoIP phone call was set up from the listed SIP number to the ZyXEL Device.
VoIP Call End Phone[Phone Port]	A VoIP phone call that came into the ZyXEL Device has terminated.

**Table 106** PSTN Line Logs

LOG MESSAGE	DESCRIPTION
PSTN Call Start	A PSTN call has been initiated.
PSTN Call End	A PSTN call has terminated.
PSTN Call Established	A PSTN call has been set up.



# CHAPTER 21

## Tools

Use these screens to upload new firmware, back up and restore the configuration, and restart the ZyXEL Device.

### 21.1 Tools Overview

#### 21.1.1 ZyXEL Firmware

Find firmware at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) in a file that (usually) uses the system model name with a ".bin" extension, e.g., "ZyXEL Device.bin". The upload process uses HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) and may take up to two minutes. After a successful upload, the system will reboot.

**Note:** Only use firmware for your ZyXEL Device's specific model. Refer to the label on the bottom of your ZyXEL Device.

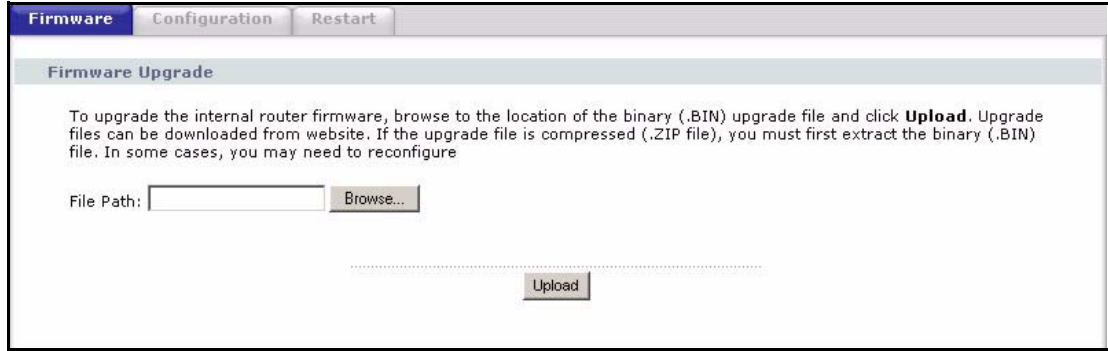
### 21.2 Tools Screens

#### 21.2.1 Firmware Screen

Use this screen to upload new firmware to the ZyXEL Device. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Tools > Firmware**.

**Note:** Only use firmware for your ZyXEL Device's specific model. Refer to the label on the bottom of your ZyXEL Device.

**Figure 110** Maintenance > Tools > Firmware



Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 107** Maintenance > Tools > Firmware

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
File Path	Enter the location of the .bin file you want to upload, or click <b>Browse...</b> to find it. You must decompress compressed (.zip) files before you can upload them.
Browse...	Click this to find the .bin file you want to upload.
Upload	Click this to begin uploading the selected file. This may take up to two minutes. See <a href="#">Section 21.2.2 on page 226</a> for more information about this process.  <b>Note:</b> Do not turn off the device while firmware upload is in progress!

## 21.2.2 Firmware Upload Screens

**Note:** Do not turn off the device while firmware upload is in progress!

When the ZyXEL Device starts to upload firmware, the **Firmware Upload in Process** screen appears.

**Figure 111** Firmware Upload In Process

The process usually takes about two minutes. The device automatically restarts in this time. This causes a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

**Figure 112** Network Temporarily Disconnected

After two minutes, log in again, and check your new firmware version in the **Status** screen. You might have to open a new browser to log in.

If the upload is not successful, the following screen appears.

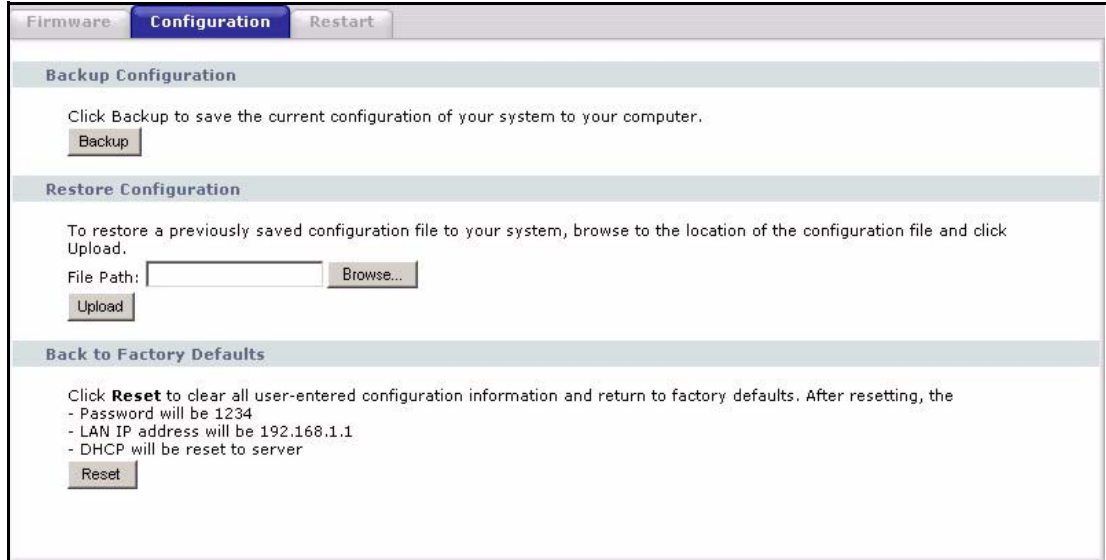
**Figure 113** Firmware Upload Error

Click **Return** to go back to the [Firmware Screen](#).

### 21.2.3 Configuration Screen

Use this screen to back up or restore the configuration of the ZyXEL Device. You can also use this screen to reset the ZyXEL Device to the factory default settings. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Tools > Configuration**.

**Figure 114** Maintenance > Tools > Configuration



Each field is described in the following table.

**Table 108** Maintenance > Tools > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Backup Configuration	
Backup	Click this to save the ZyXEL Device's current configuration to a file on your computer. Once your device is configured and functioning properly, it is highly recommended that you back up your configuration file before making configuration changes. The backup configuration file is useful if you need to return to your previous settings.
Restore Configuration	
File Path	Enter the location of the file you want to upload, or click <b>Browse...</b> to find it.
Browse	Click this to find the file you want to upload.
Upload	Click this to restore the selected configuration file. See <a href="#">Section 21.2.4 on page 228</a> for more information about this.  <b>Note:</b> Do not turn off the device while configuration file upload is in progress.
Back to Factory Defaults	
Reset	Click this to clear all user-entered configuration information and return the ZyXEL Device to its factory defaults. There is no warning screen.

## 21.2.4 Restore Configuration Screens

**Note:** Do not turn off the device while configuration file upload is in progress.



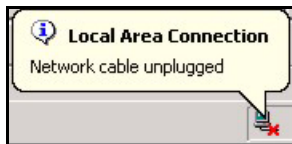
When the ZyXEL Device has finished restoring the selected configuration file, the following screen appears.

**Figure 115** Configuration Upload Successful



The device now automatically restarts. This causes a temporary network disconnect. In some operating systems, you may see the following icon on your desktop.

**Figure 116** Network Temporarily Disconnected



If the ZyXEL Device's IP address is different in the configuration file you selected, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default management IP address (192.168.5.1). See your Quick Start Guide or the appendices for details on how to set up your computer's IP address.

You might have to open a new browser to log in again.

If the upload was not successful, a **Configuration Upload Error** screen appears.

**Figure 117** Configuration Upload Error

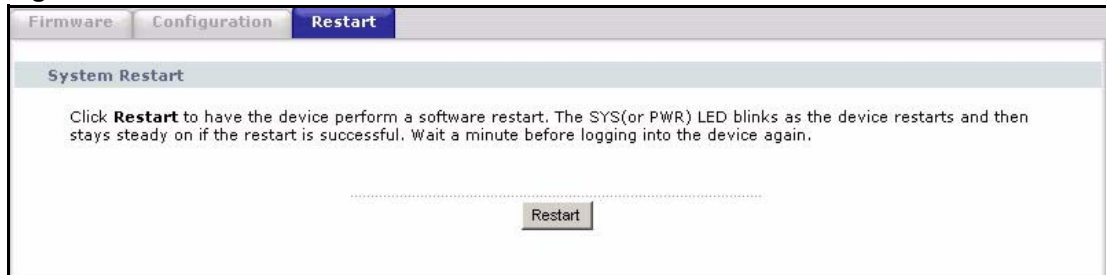


Click **Return** to go back to the [Configuration Screen](#).

## 21.2.5 Restart Screen

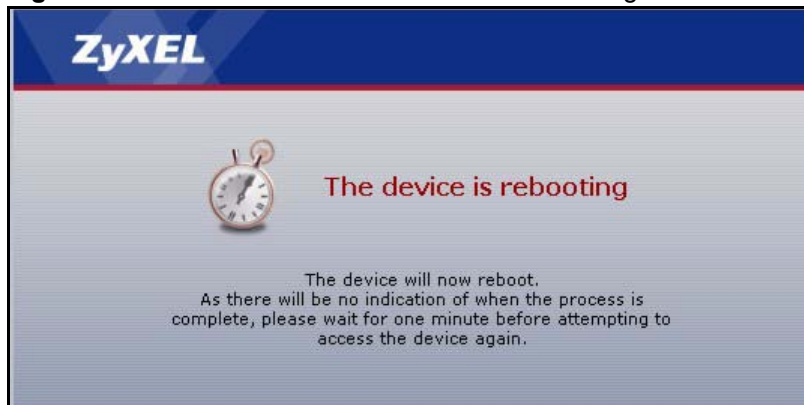
Use this screen to reboot the ZyXEL Device without turning the power off. To access this screen, click **Maintenance > Tools > Restart**.

**Figure 118** Maintenance > Tools > Restart



This does not affect the ZyXEL Device's configuration. When you click **Restart**, the following screen appears.

**Figure 119** Maintenance > Tools > Restart > In Progress



Wait one minute for the device to finish restarting. Then, you can log in again.

# APPENDIX A

## Product Specifications

See also the introduction chapter for a general overview of the key features.

### Specification Tables

**Table 109** Device Specifications

Default IP Address	192.168.1.1
Default Management Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
Default Password	1234
Dimensions	109 (Wide) x 105 (Deep) x 22 (High) mm
Weight	312 g
Ethernet Ports	Two RJ-45, 10/100Mbps Half / Full Auto-negotiation, Auto-crossover Ethernet ports
Phone Ports	Two FXS (Foreign Exchange Station) POTS ports
Feeding Voltage	On hook: -48V; Minimum Voltage: -20V Off hook: -24V
Ringing Voltage	P-2302R-P1: 40V RMS at 5 REN P-2302RL-P1: 40V RMS at 3 REN
Line Ports (P-2302RL-P1 Only)	One FXO (Foreign Exchange Office) PSTN line port
Operation Temperature	0° C ~ 40° C
Storage Temperature	0° ~ 60° C
Operation Humidity	10% ~ 85% RH
Storage Humidity	10% ~ 90% RH

**Table 110** Feature Specifications

Voice Functions	<p>SIP (RFC 3261) version 2  SDP (RFC 2327)  RTP (RFC 1889)  RTCP (RFC 1890)  G.168 Echo Cancellation  VAD (Voice Activity Detection)  Silence Suppression  CNG (Comfort Noise Generation)  QoS Supports ToS and Diffserv Tagging  Compression: G.711 (PCM), G.729 (ADPCM)  Loop Start Signaling Support  Modem and Fax Tone Detection and Pass Through  DTMF Detection  Point to Point Calling (Direct IP to IP Calling)  Speed Dial Phonebook  PSTN Line Support (Prestige P-2302RL-P1)  Support NAT Traversal / RFC 3489- IETF Simple Traversal of UDP Through NAT (STUN)  Caller ID  Dialing Type: Tone, Pulse (Auto detection)  Tip/ring polarity reversal</p>
Protocol Support	<p>PPP over Ethernet (RFC 2516)  Transparent bridging for unsupported network layer protocols.  DHCP Client</p>
Management	<p>Embedded Web Configurator  CLI (Command Line Interpreter)  Remote Management via Telnet or Web  FTP/TFTP for firmware downloading, configuration backup and restoration  Syslog  Built-in Diagnostic Tools for FLASH memory, RAM and LAN port</p>
Firewall	<p>Stateful Packet Inspection.  Prevent Denial of Service attacks such as Ping of Death, SYN Flood, LAND, Smurf etc.  Real time E-mail alerts.  Reports and logs.</p>
Content Filtering	<p>Service blocking.  Web page blocking by URL keyword.</p>
NAT/SUA	<p>Port Forwarding  1024 NAT sessions  Multimedia application.  PPTP under NAT/SUA.  IPSec passthrough  SIP ALG passthrough.</p>

**Table 110** Feature Specifications (continued)

Static Routes	16 IP and 4 Bridge
Other Features	Internal SPTGEN DNS Proxy Dynamic DNS Any IP IP Alias Traffic Redirect

## Power Adaptor Specifications

**Table 111** ZyXEL Device Power Adaptor Specifications

<b>NORTH AMERICAN PLUG STANDARDS</b>	
AC Power Adapter Model	DV-1215A
Input Power	AC120Volts/60Hz/30W
Output Power	AC12Volts/1.25A
Power Consumption	11 W
Safety Standards	UL, CUL, CSA (UL 1310, CSA C22.2 No.223)
<b>NORTH AMERICAN PLUG STANDARDS</b>	
AC Power Adapter Model	AA-121A25
Input Power	AC120Volts/60Hz/19W
Output Power	AC 12Volts/ 1.25A
Power Consumption	11W
Safety Standards	UL, CUL (UL 1310, CSA C22.2 No.223)
<b>EUROPEAN PLUG STANDARDS</b>	
AC Power Adapter Model	AA-121A3BN
Input Power	AC230Volts/50Hz/140mA
Output Power	AC12Volts/1.3A
Power Consumption	11W
Safety Standards	ITS-GS, CE (EN 60950)



# Appendix B

## Setting up Your Computer's IP Address

All computers must have a 10M or 100M Ethernet adapter card and TCP/IP installed.

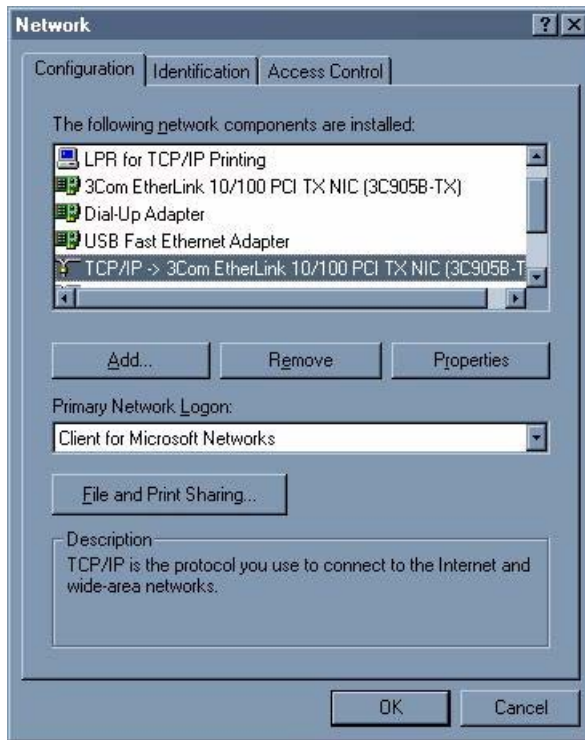
Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems and all versions of UNIX/LINUX include the software components you need to install and use TCP/IP on your computer. Windows 3.1 requires the purchase of a third-party TCP/IP application package.

TCP/IP should already be installed on computers using Windows NT/2000/XP, Macintosh OS 7 and later operating systems.

After the appropriate TCP/IP components are installed, configure the TCP/IP settings in order to “communicate” with your network.

### Windows 95/98/Me

Click **Start**, **Settings**, **Control Panel** and double-click the **Network** icon to open the **Network** window.

**Figure 120** Windows 95/98/Me: Network: Configuration

## Installing Components

The **Network** window **Configuration** tab displays a list of installed components. You need a network adapter, the TCP/IP protocol and Client for Microsoft Networks.

If you need the adapter:

- 1** In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2** Select **Adapter** and then click **Add**.
- 3** Select the manufacturer and model of your network adapter and then click **OK**.

If you need TCP/IP:

- 1** In the **Network** window, click **Add**.
- 2** Select **Protocol** and then click **Add**.
- 3** Select **Microsoft** from the list of **manufacturers**.
- 4** Select **TCP/IP** from the list of network protocols and then click **OK**.

If you need Client for Microsoft Networks:

- 1** Click **Add**.
- 2** Select **Client** and then click **Add**.

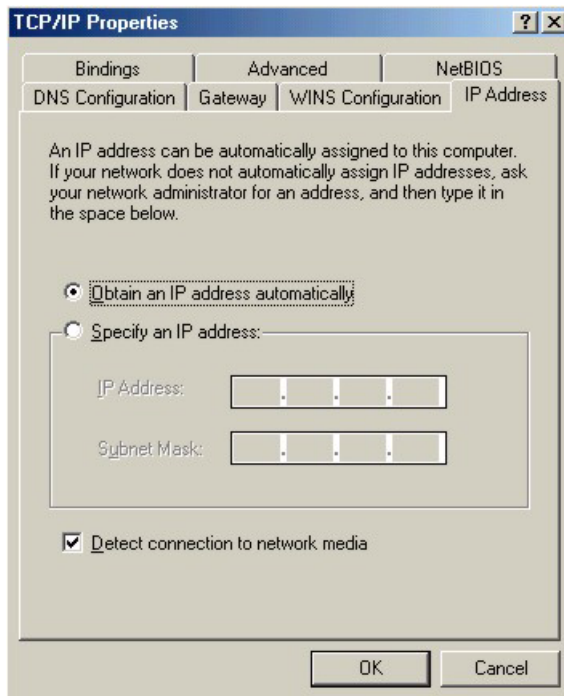


- 3 Select **Microsoft** from the list of manufacturers.
- 4 Select **Client for Microsoft Networks** from the list of network clients and then click **OK**.
- 5 Restart your computer so the changes you made take effect.

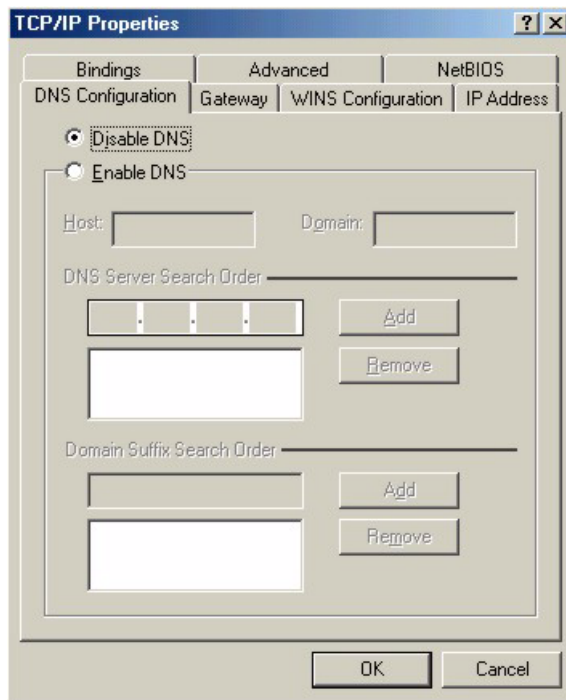
## Configuring

- 1 In the **Network** window **Configuration** tab, select your network adapter's TCP/IP entry and click **Properties**
- 2 Click the **IP Address** tab.
  - If your IP address is dynamic, select **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
  - If you have a static IP address, select **Specify an IP address** and type your information into the **IP Address** and **Subnet Mask** fields.

**Figure 121** Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: IP Address



- 3 Click the **DNS Configuration** tab.
  - If you do not know your DNS information, select **Disable DNS**.
  - If you know your DNS information, select **Enable DNS** and type the information in the fields below (you may not need to fill them all in).

**Figure 122** Windows 95/98/Me: TCP/IP Properties: DNS Configuration**4** Click the **Gateway** tab.

- If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove previously installed gateways.
- If you have a gateway IP address, type it in the **New gateway field** and click **Add**.

**5** Click **OK** to save and close the **TCP/IP Properties** window.**6** Click **OK** to close the **Network** window. Insert the Windows CD if prompted.**7** Restart your computer when prompted.

## Verifying Settings

**1** Click **Start** and then **Run**.

**2** In the **Run** window, type "winipcfg" and then click **OK** to open the **IP Configuration** window.

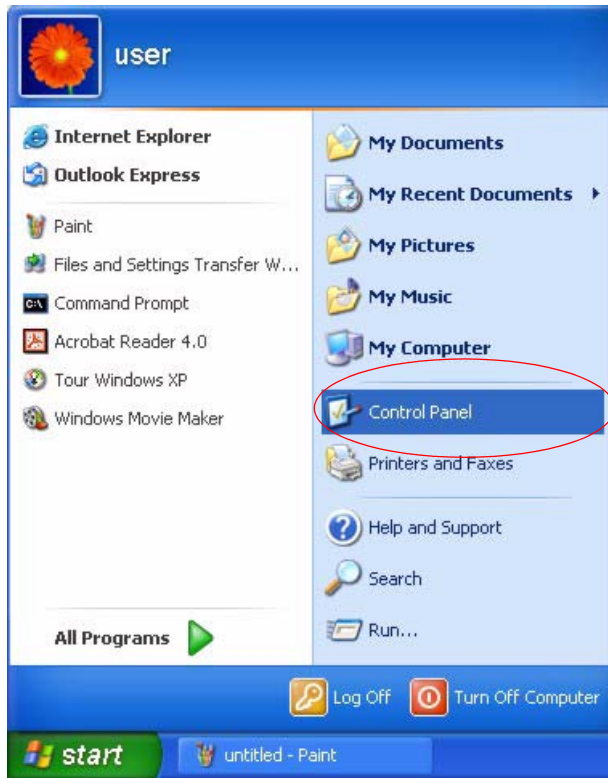
**3** Select your network adapter. You should see your computer's IP address, subnet mask and default gateway.

## Windows 2000/NT/XP

The following example figures use the default Windows XP GUI theme.

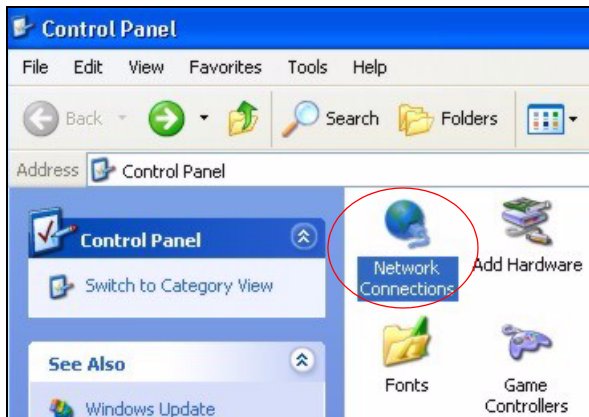
**1** Click **start** (**Start** in Windows 2000/NT), **Settings**, **Control Panel**.

**Figure 123** Windows XP: Start Menu

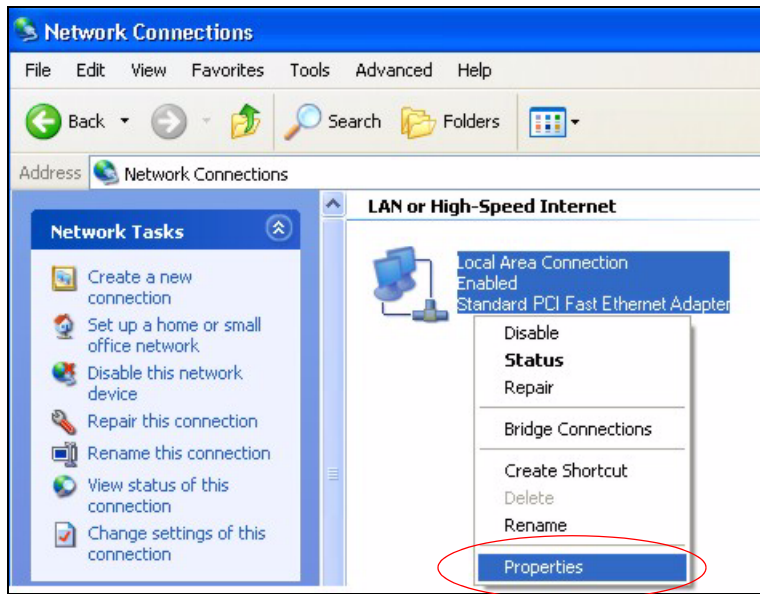


**2** In the **Control Panel**, double-click **Network Connections (Network and Dial-up Connections)** in Windows 2000/NT).

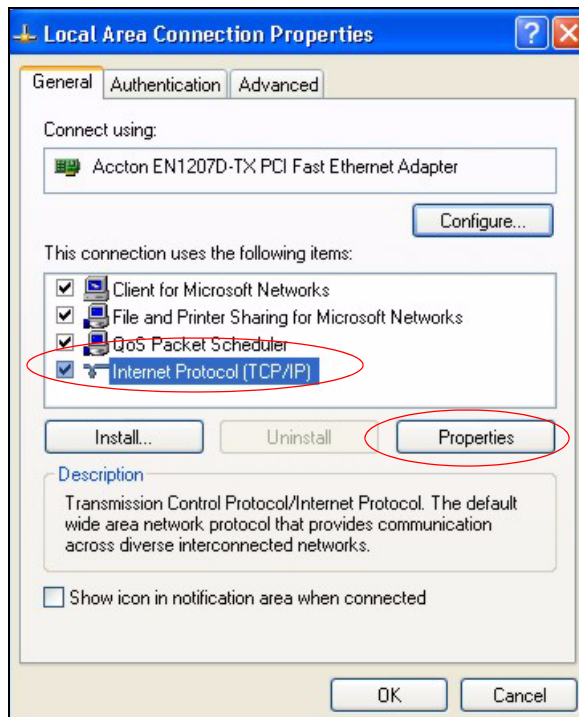
**Figure 124** Windows XP: Control Panel



**3** Right-click **Local Area Connection** and then click **Properties**.

**Figure 125** Windows XP: Control Panel: Network Connections: Properties

- 4** Select **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** (under the **General** tab in Win XP) and then click **Properties**.

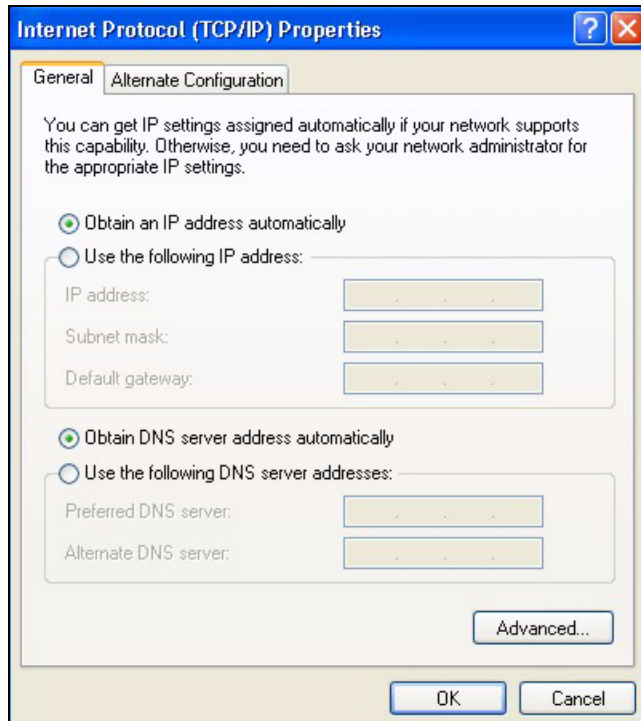
**Figure 126** Windows XP: Local Area Connection Properties

- 5** The **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window opens (the **General** tab in Windows XP).

- If you have a dynamic IP address click **Obtain an IP address automatically**.
- If you have a static IP address click **Use the following IP Address** and fill in the **IP address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default gateway** fields.

- Click **Advanced**.

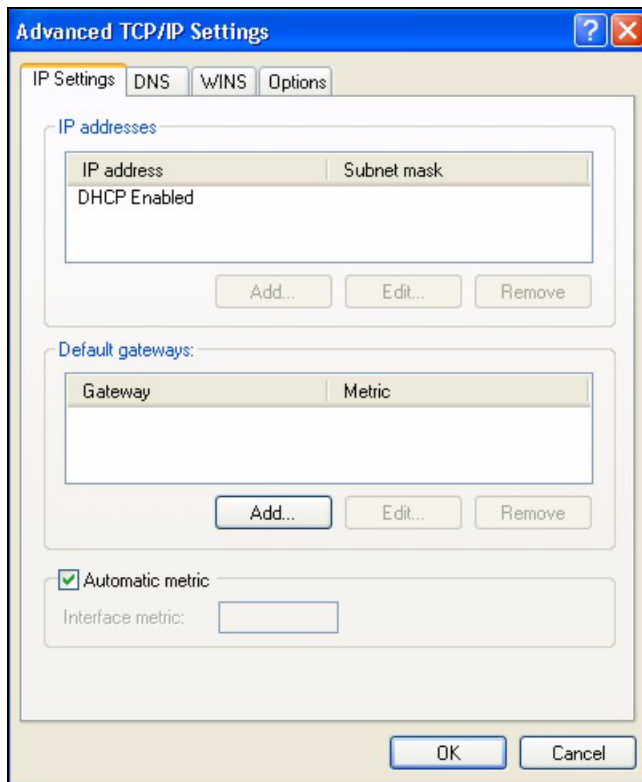
**Figure 127** Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties



- 6 If you do not know your gateway's IP address, remove any previously installed gateways in the **IP Settings** tab and click **OK**.

Do one or more of the following if you want to configure additional IP addresses:

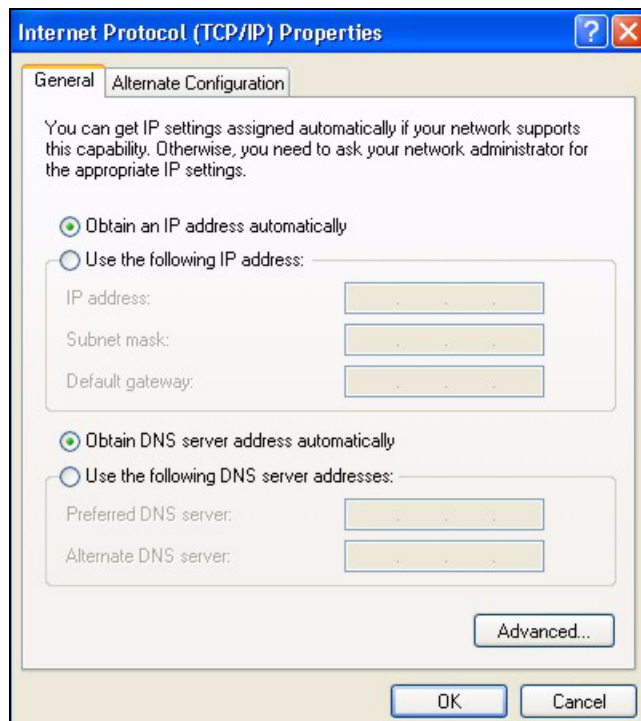
- In the **IP Settings** tab, in IP addresses, click **Add**.
- In **TCP/IP Address**, type an IP address in **IP address** and a subnet mask in **Subnet mask**, and then click **Add**.
- Repeat the above two steps for each IP address you want to add.
- Configure additional default gateways in the **IP Settings** tab by clicking **Add** in **Default gateways**.
- In **TCP/IP Gateway Address**, type the IP address of the default gateway in **Gateway**. To manually configure a default metric (the number of transmission hops), clear the **Automatic metric** check box and type a metric in **Metric**.
- Click **Add**.
- Repeat the previous three steps for each default gateway you want to add.
- Click **OK** when finished.

**Figure 128** Windows XP: Advanced TCP/IP Properties

**7** In the **Internet Protocol TCP/IP Properties** window (the **General** tab in Windows XP):

- Click **Obtain DNS server address automatically** if you do not know your DNS server IP address(es).
- If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click **Use the following DNS server addresses**, and type them in the **Preferred DNS server** and **Alternate DNS server** fields.

If you have previously configured DNS servers, click **Advanced** and then the **DNS** tab to order them.

**Figure 129** Windows XP: Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties

- 8** Click **OK** to close the **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) Properties** window.
- 9** Click **Close (OK in Windows 2000/NT)** to close the **Local Area Connection Properties** window.
- 10** Close the **Network Connections** window (**Network and Dial-up Connections** in Windows 2000/NT).
- 11** Restart your computer (if prompted).

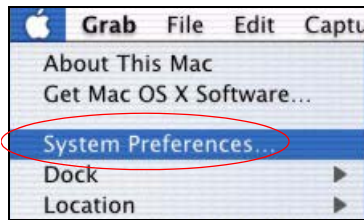
## Verifying Settings

- 1** Click **Start, All Programs, Accessories** and then **Command Prompt**.
- 2** In the **Command Prompt** window, type "ipconfig" and then press [ENTER]. You can also open **Network Connections**, right-click a network connection, click **Status** and then click the **Support** tab.

## Macintosh OS X

- 1** Click the **Apple** menu, and click **System Preferences** to open the **System Preferences** window.

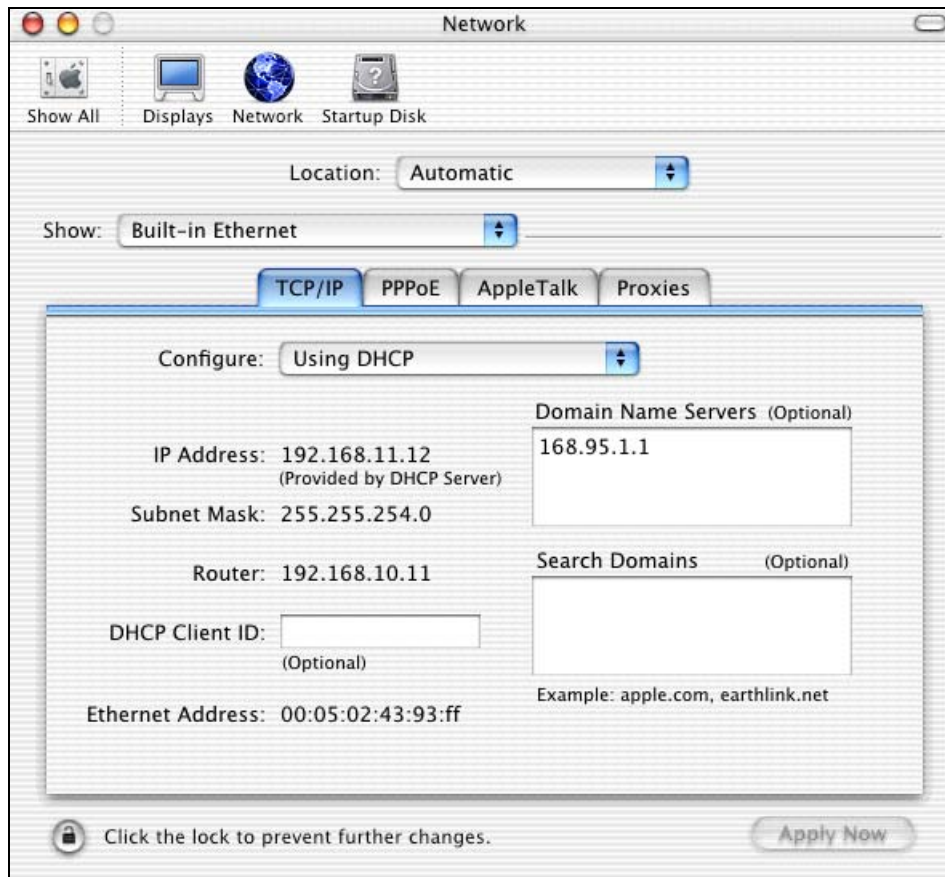


**Figure 130** Macintosh OS X: Apple Menu

**2** Click **Network** in the icon bar.

- Select **Automatic** from the **Location** list.
- Select **Built-in Ethernet** from the **Show** list.
- Click the **TCP/IP** tab.

**3** For dynamically assigned settings, select **Using DHCP** from the **Configure** list.

**Figure 131** Macintosh OS X: Network

**4** For statically assigned settings, do the following:

- From the **Configure** box, select **Manually**.
- Type your IP address in the **IP Address** box.
- Type your subnet mask in the **Subnet mask** box.
- Type the IP address of your gateway in the **Router address** box.

**5** Click **Apply Now** and close the window.



- 6 Restart your computer (if prompted).

## Verifying Settings

Check your TCP/IP properties in the **Network** window.

## Linux

This section shows you how to configure your computer's TCP/IP settings in Red Hat Linux 9.0. Procedure, screens and file location may vary depending on your Linux distribution and release version.

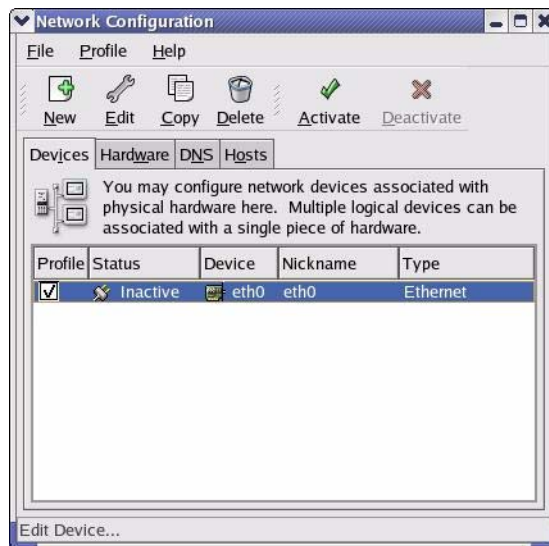
**Note:** Make sure you are logged in as the root administrator.

## Using the K Desktop Environment (KDE)

Follow the steps below to configure your computer IP address using the KDE.

- 1 Click the Red Hat button (located on the bottom left corner), select **System Setting** and click **Network**.

**Figure 132** Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Network Configuration: Devices



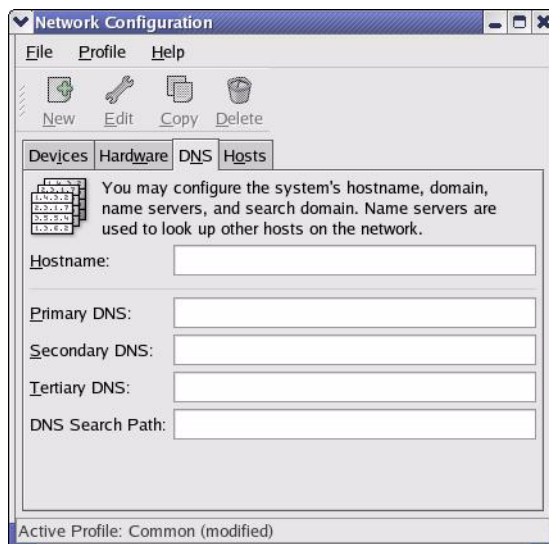
- 2 Double-click on the profile of the network card you wish to configure. The **Ethernet Device General** screen displays as shown.

**Figure 133** Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Ethernet Device: General

- If you have a dynamic IP address, click **Automatically obtain IP address settings with** and select **dhcp** from the drop down list.
- If you have a static IP address, click **Statically set IP Addresses** and fill in the **Address**, **Subnet mask**, and **Default Gateway Address** fields.

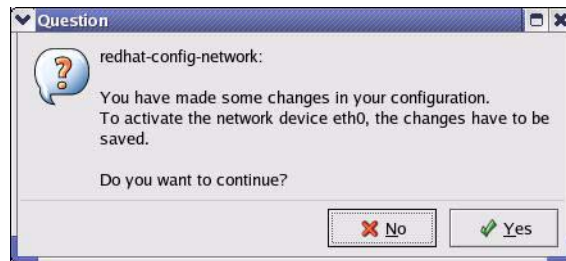
**3** Click **OK** to save the changes and close the **Ethernet Device General** screen.

**4** If you know your DNS server IP address(es), click the **DNS** tab in the **Network Configuration** screen. Enter the DNS server information in the fields provided.

**Figure 134** Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Network Configuration: DNS

**5** Click the **Devices** tab.

**6** Click the **Activate** button to apply the changes. The following screen displays. Click **Yes** to save the changes in all screens.

**Figure 135** Red Hat 9.0: KDE: Network Configuration: Activate

- 7 After the network card restart process is complete, make sure the **Status** is **Active** in the **Network Configuration** screen.

## Using Configuration Files

Follow the steps below to edit the network configuration files and set your computer IP address.

- 1 Assuming that you have only one network card on the computer, locate the `ifconfig-eth0` configuration file (where `eth0` is the name of the Ethernet card). Open the configuration file with any plain text editor.
  - If you have a dynamic IP address, enter `dhcp` in the `BOOTPROTO=` field. The following figure shows an example.

**Figure 136** Red Hat 9.0: Dynamic IP Address Setting in `ifconfig-eth0`

```
DEVICE=eth0
ONBOOT=yes
BOOTPROTO=dhcp
USERCTL=no
PEERDNS=yes
TYPE=Ethernet
```

- If you have a static IP address, enter `static` in the `BOOTPROTO=` field. Type `IPADDR=` followed by the IP address (in dotted decimal notation) and type `NETMASK=` followed by the subnet mask. The following example shows an example where the static IP address is 192.168.1.10 and the subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

**Figure 137** Red Hat 9.0: Static IP Address Setting in ifconfig-eth0

```

DEVICE=eth0
ONBOOT=yes
BOOTPROTO=static
IPADDR=192.168.1.10
NETMASK=255.255.255.0
USERCTL=no
PEERDNS=yes
TYPE=Ethernet

```

- 2 If you know your DNS server IP address(es), enter the DNS server information in the `resolv.conf` file in the `/etc` directory. The following figure shows an example where two DNS server IP addresses are specified.

**Figure 138** Red Hat 9.0: DNS Settings in resolv.conf

```

nameserver 172.23.5.1
nameserver 172.23.5.2

```

- 3 After you edit and save the configuration files, you must restart the network card. Enter `./network restart` in the `/etc/rc.d/init.d` directory. The following figure shows an example.

**Figure 139** Red Hat 9.0: Restart Ethernet Card

```

[root@localhost init.d]# network restart

Shutting down interface eth0:                [OK]
Shutting down loopback interface:           [OK]
Setting network parameters:                 [OK]
Bringing up loopback interface:             [OK]
Bringing up interface eth0:                 [OK]

```

## Verifying Settings

Enter `ifconfig` in a terminal screen to check your TCP/IP properties.

**Figure 140** Red Hat 9.0: Checking TCP/IP Properties

```

[root@localhost]# ifconfig
eth0      Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr 00:50:BA:72:5B:44
          inet addr:172.23.19.129 Bcast:172.23.19.255 Mask:255.255.255.0
          UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
          RX packets:717 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 frame:0
          TX packets:13 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
          collisions:0 txqueuelen:100
          RX bytes:730412 (713.2 Kb) TX bytes:1570 (1.5 Kb)
          Interrupt:10 Base address:0x1000
[root@localhost]#

```

# APPENDIX C

## IP Subnetting

### IP Addressing

Routers “route” based on the network number. The router that delivers the data packet to the correct destination host uses the host ID.

### IP Classes

An IP address is made up of four octets (eight bits), written in dotted decimal notation, for example, 192.168.1.1. IP addresses are categorized into different classes. The class of an address depends on the value of its first octet.

- Class “A” addresses have a 0 in the left most bit. In a class “A” address the first octet is the network number and the remaining three octets make up the host ID.
- Class “B” addresses have a 1 in the left most bit and a 0 in the next left most bit. In a class “B” address the first two octets make up the network number and the two remaining octets make up the host ID.
- Class “C” addresses begin (starting from the left) with 1 1 0. In a class “C” address the first three octets make up the network number and the last octet is the host ID.
- Class “D” addresses begin with 1 1 1 0. Class “D” addresses are used for multicasting. (There is also a class “E” address. It is reserved for future use.)

**Table 112** Classes of IP Addresses

IP ADDRESS:		OCTET 1	OCTET 2	OCTET 3	OCTET 4
Class A	0	Network number	Host ID	Host ID	Host ID
Class B	10	Network number	Network number	Host ID	Host ID
Class C	110	Network number	Network number	Network number	Host ID

**Note:** Host IDs of all zeros or all ones are not allowed.

Therefore:

A class “C” network (8 host bits) can have  $2^8 - 2$  or 254 hosts.

A class “B” address (16 host bits) can have  $2^{16} - 2$  or 65534 hosts.

A class “A” address (24 host bits) can have  $2^{24} - 2$  hosts (approximately 16 million hosts).

Since the first octet of a class “A” IP address must contain a “0”, the first octet of a class “A” address can have a value of 0 to 127.

Similarly the first octet of a class “B” must begin with “10”, therefore the first octet of a class “B” address has a valid range of 128 to 191. The first octet of a class “C” address begins with “110”, and therefore has a range of 192 to 223.

**Table 113** Allowed IP Address Range By Class

CLASS	ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (BINARY)	ALLOWED RANGE OF FIRST OCTET (DECIMAL)
Class A	00000000 to 01111111	0 to 127
Class B	10000000 to 10111111	128 to 191
Class C	11000000 to 11011111	192 to 223
Class D	11100000 to 11101111	224 to 239

## Subnet Masks

A subnet mask is used to determine which bits are part of the network number, and which bits are part of the host ID (using a logical AND operation). A subnet mask has 32 is a “1” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the network number. If a bit in the subnet mask is “0” then the corresponding bit in the IP address is part of the host ID.

Subnet masks are expressed in dotted decimal notation just as IP addresses are. The “natural” masks for class A, B and C IP addresses are as follows.

**Table 114** “Natural” Masks

CLASS	NATURAL MASK
A	255.0.0.0
B	255.255.0.0
C	255.255.255.0

## Subnetting

With subnetting, the class arrangement of an IP address is ignored. For example, a class C address no longer has to have 24 bits of network number and 8 bits of host ID. With subnetting, some of the host ID bits are converted into network number bits. By convention, subnet masks always consist of a continuous sequence of ones beginning from the left most bit of the mask, followed by a continuous sequence of zeros, for a total number of 32 bits.

Since the mask is always a continuous number of ones beginning from the left, followed by a continuous number of zeros for the remainder of the 32 bit mask, you can simply specify the number of ones instead of writing the value of each octet. This is usually specified by writing a “/” followed by the number of bits in the mask after the address.

For example, 192.1.1.0 /25 is equivalent to saying 192.1.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128.

The following table shows all possible subnet masks for a class “C” address using both notations.

**Table 115** Alternative Subnet Mask Notation

SUBNET MASK IP ADDRESS	SUBNET MASK “1” BITS	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
255.255.255.0	/24	0000 0000
255.255.255.128	/25	1000 0000
255.255.255.192	/26	1100 0000
255.255.255.224	/27	1110 0000
255.255.255.240	/28	1111 0000
255.255.255.248	/29	1111 1000
255.255.255.252	/30	1111 1100

The first mask shown is the class “C” natural mask. Normally if no mask is specified it is understood that the natural mask is being used.

## Example: Two Subnets

As an example, you have a class “C” address 192.168.1.0 with subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

**Table 116** Two Subnets Example

	NETWORK NUMBER	HOST ID
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	0
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	00000000

The first three octets of the address make up the network number (class “C”). You want to have two separate networks.

Divide the network 192.168.1.0 into two separate subnets by converting one of the host ID bits of the IP address to a network number bit. The “borrowed” host ID bit can be either “0” or “1” thus giving two subnets; 192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 and 192.168.1.128 with mask 255.255.255.128.

**Note:** In the following charts, shaded/bolded last octet bit values indicate host ID bits “borrowed” to form network ID bits. The number of “borrowed” host ID bits determines the number of subnets you can have. The remaining number of host ID bits (after “borrowing”) determines the number of hosts you can have on each subnet.

**Table 117** Subnet 1

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	<b>00000000</b>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	128
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	<b>10000000</b>
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

**Table 118** Subnet 2

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	<b>10000000</b>
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.	128
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	<b>10000000</b>
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

The remaining 7 bits determine the number of hosts each subnet can have. Host IDs of all zeros represent the subnet itself and host IDs of all ones are the broadcast address for that subnet, so the actual number of hosts available on each subnet in the example above is  $2^7 - 2$  or 126 hosts for each subnet.

192.168.1.0 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the subnet itself, and 192.168.1.127 with mask 255.255.255.128 is the directed broadcast address for the first subnet. Therefore, the lowest IP address that can be assigned to an actual host for the first subnet is 192.168.1.1 and the highest is 192.168.1.126. Similarly the host ID range for the second subnet is 192.168.1.129 to 192.168.1.254.



## Example: Four Subnets

The above example illustrated using a 25-bit subnet mask to divide a class “C” address space into two subnets. Similarly to divide a class “C” address into four subnets, you need to “borrow” two host ID bits to give four possible combinations of 00, 01, 10 and 11. The subnet mask is 26 bits (11111111.11111111.11111111.11000000) or 255.255.255.192. Each subnet contains 6 host ID bits, giving  $2^6-2$  or 62 hosts for each subnet (all 0’s is the subnet itself, all 1’s is the broadcast address on the subnet).

**Table 119** Subnet 1

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	0
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	00000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.0	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.1	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.63	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.62	

**Table 120** Subnet 2

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	64
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	01000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.64	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.65	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.127	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.126	

**Table 121** Subnet 3

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	128
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	10000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.128	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.129	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.191	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.190	

**Table 122** Subnet 4

	NETWORK NUMBER	LAST OCTET BIT VALUE
IP Address	192.168.1.	192
IP Address (Binary)	11000000.10101000.00000001.	11000000
Subnet Mask (Binary)	11111111.11111111.11111111.	11000000
Subnet Address: 192.168.1.192	Lowest Host ID: 192.168.1.193	
Broadcast Address: 192.168.1.255	Highest Host ID: 192.168.1.254	

## Example Eight Subnets

Similarly use a 27-bit mask to create 8 subnets (001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110).

The following table shows class C IP address last octet values for each subnet.

**Table 123** Eight Subnets

SUBNET	SUBNET ADDRESS	FIRST ADDRESS	LAST ADDRESS	BROADCAST ADDRESS
1	0	1	30	31
2	32	33	62	63
3	64	65	94	95
4	96	97	126	127
5	128	129	158	159
6	160	161	190	191
7	192	193	222	223
8	224	225	254	255

The following table is a summary for class “C” subnet planning.

**Table 124** Class C Subnet Planning

NO. “BORROWED” HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.255.128 (/25)	2	126
2	255.255.255.192 (/26)	4	62
3	255.255.255.224 (/27)	8	30
4	255.255.255.240 (/28)	16	14
5	255.255.255.248 (/29)	32	6
6	255.255.255.252 (/30)	64	2
7	255.255.255.254 (/31)	128	1

## Subnetting With Class A and Class B Networks

For class “A” and class “B” addresses the subnet mask also determines which bits are part of the network number and which are part of the host ID.

A class “B” address has two host ID octets available for subnetting and a class “A” address has three host ID octets (see [Table 112 on page 249](#)) available for subnetting.

The following table is a summary for class “B” subnet planning.

**Table 125** Class B Subnet Planning

NO. “BORROWED” HOST BITS	SUBNET MASK	NO. SUBNETS	NO. HOSTS PER SUBNET
1	255.255.128.0 (/17)	2	32766
2	255.255.192.0 (/18)	4	16382
3	255.255.224.0 (/19)	8	8190
4	255.255.240.0 (/20)	16	4094
5	255.255.248.0 (/21)	32	2046
6	255.255.252.0 (/22)	64	1022
7	255.255.254.0 (/23)	128	510
8	255.255.255.0 (/24)	256	254
9	255.255.255.128 (/25)	512	126
10	255.255.255.192 (/26)	1024	62
11	255.255.255.224 (/27)	2048	30
12	255.255.255.240 (/28)	4096	14
13	255.255.255.248 (/29)	8192	6
14	255.255.255.252 (/30)	16384	2
15	255.255.255.254 (/31)	32768	1



# APPENDIX D

## SIP Passthrough

### Enabling/Disabling the SIP ALG

You can turn off the ZyXEL Device SIP ALG to avoid retranslating the IP address of an existing SIP device that is using STUN. If you want to use STUN with a SIP client device (a SIP phone or IP phone for example) behind the ZyXEL Device, use the `ip alg disable ALG_SIP` command to turn off the SIP ALG.

### Signaling Session Timeout

Most SIP clients have an “expire” mechanism indicating the lifetime of signaling sessions. The SIP UA sends registration packets to the SIP server periodically and keeps the session alive in the ZyXEL Device.

If the SIP client does not have this mechanism and makes no call during the ZyXEL Device SIP timeout default (60 minutes), the ZyXEL Device SIP ALG drops any incoming calls after the timeout period. You can use the `ip alg siptimeout` command to change the timeout value.

### Audio Session Timeout

If no voice packets go through the SIP ALG before the timeout period default (5 minutes) expires, the SIP ALG does not drop the call but blocks all voice traffic and deletes the audio session. You cannot hear anything and you will need to make a new call to continue your conversation.



# APPENDIX E

## NAT

### NAT Overview

NAT (Network Address Translation - NAT, RFC 1631) is the translation of the IP address of a host in a packet. For example, the source address of an outgoing packet, used within one network is changed to a different IP address known within another network.

### NAT Definitions

Inside/outside denotes where a host is located relative to the ZyXEL Device. For example, the computers of your subscribers are the inside hosts, while the web servers on the Internet are the outside hosts.

Global/local denotes the IP address of a host in a packet as the packet traverses a router. For example, the local address refers to the IP address of a host when the packet is in the local network, while the global address refers to the IP address of the host when the same packet is traveling in the WAN side.

Note that inside/outside refers to the location of a host, while global/local refers to the IP address of a host used in a packet. Thus, an inside local address (ILA) is the IP address of an inside host in a packet when the packet is still in the local network, while an inside global address (IGA) is the IP address of the same inside host when the packet is on the WAN side. The following table summarizes this information.

**Table 126** NAT Definitions

TERM	DESCRIPTION
Inside	This refers to the host on the LAN.
Outside	This refers to the host on the WAN.
Local	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the LAN.
Global	This refers to the packet address (source or destination) as the packet travels on the WAN.

**Note:** NAT never changes the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host.

## What NAT Does

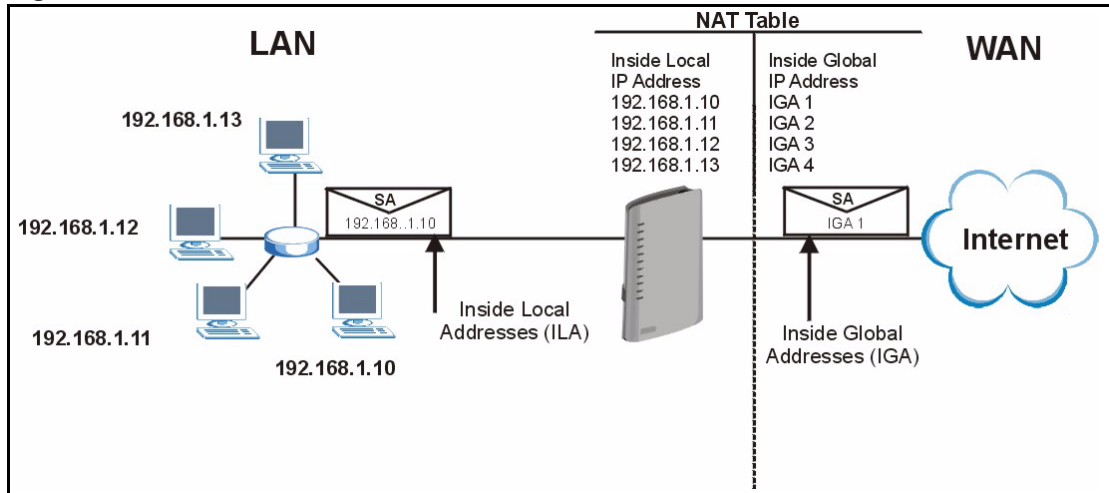
In the simplest form, NAT changes the source IP address in a packet received from a subscriber (the inside local address) to another (the inside global address) before forwarding the packet to the WAN side. When the response comes back, NAT translates the destination address (the inside global address) back to the inside local address before forwarding it to the original inside host. Note that the IP address (either local or global) of an outside host is never changed.

The global IP addresses for the inside hosts can be either static or dynamically assigned by the ISP. In addition, you can designate servers (for example a web server and a telnet server) on your local network and make them accessible to the outside world. If you do not define any servers (for Many-to-One and Many-to-Many Overload mapping), NAT offers the additional benefit of firewall protection. With no servers defined, your ZyXEL Device filters out all incoming inquiries, thus preventing intruders from probing your network. For more information on IP address translation, refer to *RFC 1631, The IP Network Address Translator (NAT)*.

## How NAT Works

Each packet has two addresses – a source address and a destination address. For outgoing packets, the ILA (Inside Local Address) is the source address on the LAN, and the IGA (Inside Global Address) is the source address on the WAN. For incoming packets, the ILA is the destination address on the LAN, and the IGA is the destination address on the WAN. NAT maps private (local) IP addresses to globally unique ones required for communication with hosts on other networks. It replaces the original IP source address (and TCP or UDP source port numbers for Many-to-One and Many-to-Many Overload NAT mapping) in each packet and then forwards it to the Internet. The ZyXEL Device keeps track of the original addresses and port numbers so incoming reply packets can have their original values restored. The following figure illustrates this.

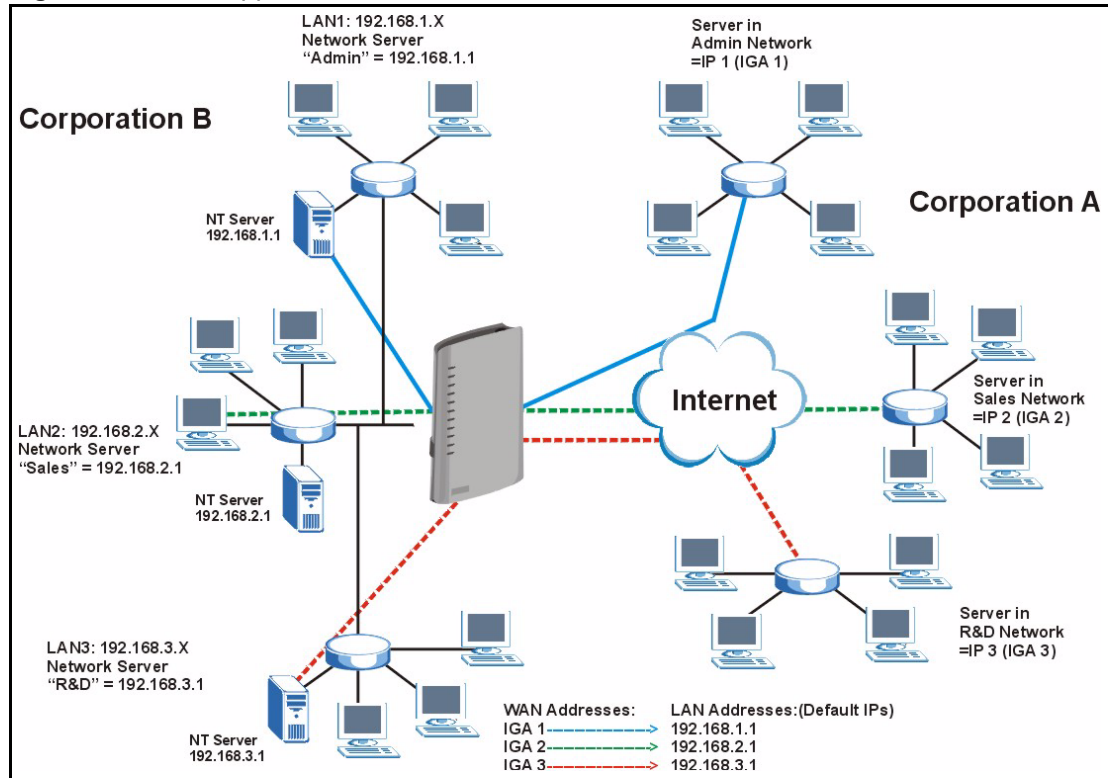


**Figure 141** How NAT Works

## NAT Application

The following figure illustrates a possible NAT application, where three inside LANs (logical LANs using IP Alias) behind the ZyXEL Device can communicate with three distinct WAN networks. More examples follow at the end of this chapter.

Figure 142 NAT Application With IP Alias



## NAT Mapping Types

NAT supports five types of IP/port mapping. They are:

- **One-to-One:** In One-to-One mode, the ZyXEL Device maps one local IP address to one global IP address.
- **Many to One:** In Many-to-One mode, the ZyXEL Device maps multiple local IP addresses to one global IP address. This is equivalent to SUA (i.e., PAT, port address translation), ZyXEL's Single User Account feature (the SUA Only option).
- **Many-to-Many Overload:** In Many-to-Many Overload mode, the ZyXEL Device maps the multiple local IP addresses to shared global IP addresses.
- **Many One-to-One:** In Many-One-to-One mode, the ZyXEL Device maps each local IP address to a unique global IP address.
- **Server:** This type allows you to specify inside servers of different services behind the NAT to be accessible to the outside world.

**Note:** Port numbers do not change for One-to-One and Many One-to-One NAT mapping types.

The following table summarizes these types.

**Table 127** NAT Mapping Types

TYPE	IP MAPPING	ABBREVIATION
One-to-One	ILA1 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1	1-1
Many-to-One (SUA/PAT)	ILA1 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1 ILA2 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1 ...	M-1
Many-to-Many Overload	ILA1 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1 ILA2 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA2 ILA3 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1 ILA4 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA2 ...	M-M Ov
Many One-to-One	ILA1 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1 ILA2 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA2 ILA3 $\leftrightarrow$ IGA3 ...	M-1-1
Server	Server 1 IP $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1 Server 2 IP $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1 Server 3 IP $\leftrightarrow$ IGA1	Server

## NAT Types

This section discusses the following NAT types that may be implemented on a router in front of the ZyXEL Device.

- Full Cone
- Restricted Cone
- Port Restricted Cone
- Symmetric

The following table summarizes how these NAT types handle outgoing and incoming packets. Read the following sections for more details and examples.

**Table 128** NAT Types

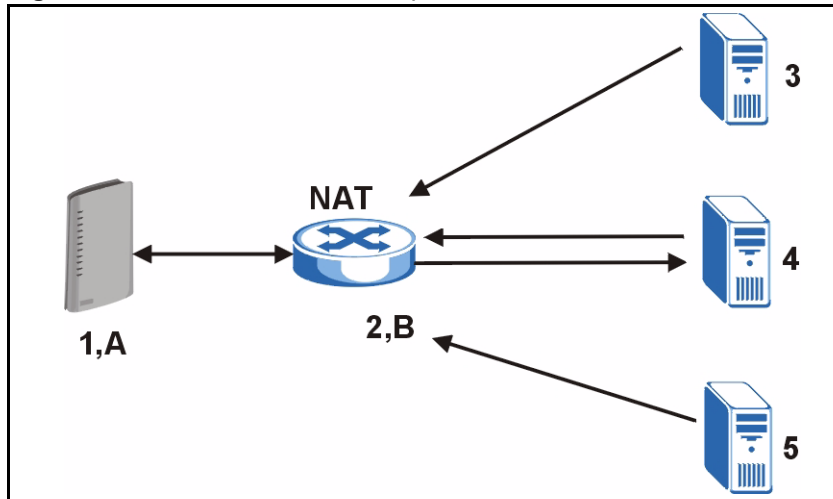
	<b>FULL CONE</b>	<b>RESTRICTED CONE</b>	<b>PORT RESTRICTED CONE</b>	<b>SYMMETRIC</b>
Incoming Packets	Any external host can send packets to the mapped external IP address and port.	Only external hosts with an IP address to which the internal host has already sent a packet can send packets to the mapped external IP address and port.	Only external hosts with an IP address and port to which the internal host has already sent a packet can send packets to the mapped external IP address and port.	A host on the external network can only send packets to the specific mapped external IP address and port that the NAT router used in sending a packet to the external host's IP address and port.
Outgoing Packets	The NAT router maps the internal IP address and port of all outgoing packets to a single IP address and port on the external network.			The NAT router maps the internal IP address and port of each outgoing packet to a different external IP address and port for each different destination IP address and port.

The examples in these NAT type sections describe NAT translation between internal (private) and external (public) IP addresses.

### Full Cone NAT

In full cone NAT, the NAT router maps all outgoing packets from an internal IP address and port to a single IP address and port on the external network. The NAT router also maps packets coming to that external IP address and port to the internal IP address and port.

In the following example, the NAT router maps the source address of all packets sent from the ZyXEL Device's internal IP address **1** and port **A** to IP address **2** and port **B** on the external network. The NAT router also performs NAT on all incoming packets sent to IP address **2** and port **B** and sends them to IP address **1**, port **A**.

**Figure 143** Full Cone NAT Example

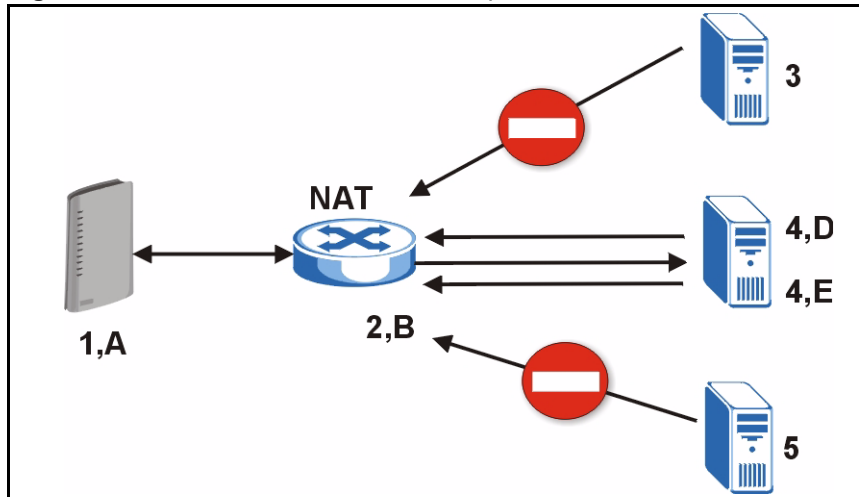
### Restricted Cone NAT

As in full cone NAT, a restricted cone NAT router maps all outgoing packets from an internal IP address and port to a single IP address and port on the external network. In the following example, the NAT router maps the source address of all packets sent from internal IP address **1** and port **A** to IP address **2** and port **B** on the external network.

The difference from full cone NAT is in how the restricted cone NAT router handles packets coming in from the external network. A host on the external network (IP address **3** or IP address **4** for example) can only send packets to the internal host if the internal host has already sent a packet to the external host's IP address.

A ZyXEL Device with IP address **1** and port **A** sends packets to IP address **3** and IP address **4**. The NAT router changes the ZyXEL Device's IP address to **2** and port to **B**.

Both **4, D** and **4, E** can send packets to **2, B** since **1, A** has already sent packets to **4**. The NAT router will perform NAT on the packets from **4, D** and **4, E** and send them to the ZyXEL Device at IP address **1**, port **A**. Packets have not been sent from **1, A** to **3** or **5**, so **3** and **5** cannot send packets to **1, A**.

**Figure 144** Restricted Cone NAT Example

### Port Restricted Cone NAT

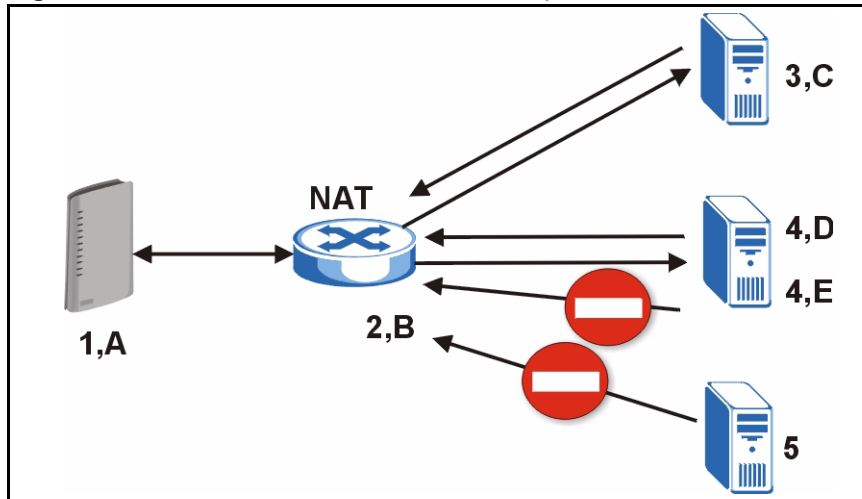
As in full cone NAT, a port restricted cone NAT router maps all outgoing packets from an internal IP address and port to a single IP address and port on the external network. In the following example, the NAT router maps the source address of all packets sent from internal IP address **1** and port **A** to IP address **2** and port **B** on the external network.

The difference from full cone and restricted cone NAT is in how the port restricted cone NAT router handles packets coming in from the external network. A host on the external network (IP address **3** and Port **C** for example) can only send packets to the internal host if the internal host has already sent a packet to the external host's IP address and port.

A ZyXEL Device with IP address **1** and port **A** sends packets to IP address **3**, port **C** and IP address **4**, port **D**. The NAT router changes the ZyXEL Device's IP address to **2** and port **B**.

Since **1, A** has already sent packets to **3, C** and **4, D**, they can send packets back to **2, B** and the NAT router will perform NAT on them and send them to the ZyXEL Device at IP address **1**, port **A**.

Packets have not been sent from **1, A** to **4, E** or **5**, so they cannot send packets to **1, A**.

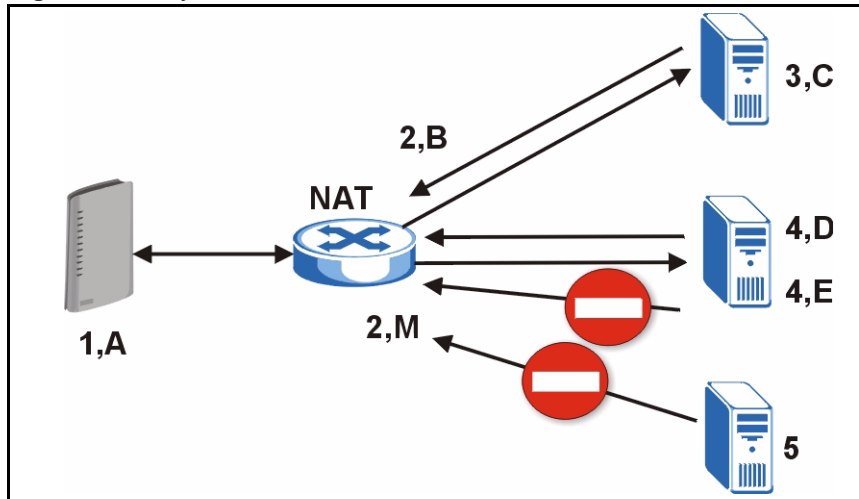
**Figure 145** Port Restricted Cone NAT Example

### Symmetric NAT

The full, restricted and port restricted cone NAT types use the same mapping for an outgoing packet's source address regardless of the destination IP address and port. In symmetric NAT, the mapping of an outgoing packet's source address to a source address in another network is different for each different destination IP address and port.

In the following example, the NAT router maps the ZyXEL Device's source address IP address **1** and port **A** to IP address **2** and port **B** on the external network for packets sent to IP address **3** and port **B**. The NAT router uses a different mapping (IP address **2** and port **M**) when the ZyXEL Device sends packets to IP address **4** and port **D**.

A host on the external network (IP address **3** and port **C** for example) can only send packets to the internal host via the external IP address and port that the NAT router used in sending a packet to the external host's IP address and port. So in the example, only **3, C** is allowed to send packets to **2, B** and only **4, D** is allowed to send packets to **2, M**.

**Figure 146** Symmetric NAT

## SUA (Single User Account) Versus NAT

SUA (Single User Account) is a ZyNOS implementation of a subset of NAT that supports two types of mapping, **Many-to-One** and **Server**. The ZyXEL Device also supports **Full Feature** NAT to map multiple global IP addresses to multiple private LAN IP addresses of clients or servers using mapping types.

## SUA Server

A SUA server set is a list of inside (behind NAT on the LAN) servers, for example, web or FTP, that you can make visible to the outside world even though SUA makes your whole inside network appear as a single computer to the outside world.

You may enter a single port number or a range of port numbers to be forwarded, and the local IP address of the desired server. The port number identifies a service; for example, web service is on port 80 and FTP on port 21. In some cases, such as for unknown services or where one server can support more than one service (for example both FTP and web service), it might be better to specify a range of port numbers. You can allocate a server IP address that corresponds to a port or a range of ports.

**Note:** Many residential broadband ISP accounts do not allow you to run any server processes (such as a Web or FTP server) from your location. Your ISP may periodically check for servers and may suspend your account if it discovers any active services at your location. If you are unsure, contact your ISP.



# APPENDIX F

## Internal SPTGEN

This appendix introduces Internal SPTGEN. All menus shown in this appendix are example menus meant to show SPTGEN usage. Actual menus for your product may differ.

### Internal SPTGEN Overview

Internal SPTGEN (System Parameter Table Generator) is a configuration text file useful for efficient configuration of multiple ZyXEL devices. Internal SPTGEN lets you configure, save and upload multiple menus at the same time using just one configuration text file – eliminating the need to navigate and configure individual screens for each ZyXEL device. You can use FTP to get the Internal SPTGEN file. Then edit the file in a text editor and use FTP to upload it again to the same device or another one. See the following sections for details.

### The Configuration Text File Format

All Internal SPTGEN text files conform to the following format:

```
<field identification number = field name = parameter values
allowed = input>,
```

where <input> is your input conforming to <parameter values allowed>.

The figure shown next is an example of an Internal SPTGEN text file.

**Figure 147** Configuration Text File Format: Column Descriptions

/ Menu 1 General Setup		
10000000 = Configured	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
10000001 = System Name	<Str>	= Your Device
10000002 = Location	<Str>	=
10000003 = Contact Person's Name	<Str>	=
10000004 = Route IP	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
10000005 = Route IPX	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
10000006 = Bridge	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0

**Note:** DO NOT alter or delete any field except parameters in the Input column.

This appendix introduces Internal SPTGEN. All menus shown in this appendix are example menus meant to show SPTGEN usage. Actual menus for your product may differ.

## Internal SPTGEN File Modification - Important Points to Remember

Each parameter you enter must be preceded by one “=” sign and one space.

Some parameters are dependent on others. For example, if you disable the **Configured** field in menu 1 (see [Figure 147 on page 269](#)), then you disable every field in this menu.

If you enter a parameter that is invalid in the **Input** column, the ZyXEL device will not save the configuration and the command line will display the **Field Identification Number**. [Figure 148 on page 270](#), shown next, is an example of what the ZyXEL device displays if you enter a value other than “0” or “1” in the **Input** column of **Field Identification Number 1000000** (refer to [Figure 147 on page 269](#)).

**Figure 148** Invalid Parameter Entered: Command Line Example

```
field value is not legal error:-1
ROM-t is not saved, error Line ID:10000000
reboot to get the original configuration
Bootbase Version: V2.02 | 2/22/2001 13:33:11
RAM: Size = 8192 Kbytes
FLASH: Intel 8M *2
```

The ZyXEL device will display the following if you enter parameter(s) that *are* valid.

**Figure 149** Valid Parameter Entered: Command Line Example

```
Please wait for the system to write SPT text file(ROM-t)...
Bootbase Version: V2.02 | 2/22/2001 13:33:11
RAM: Size = 8192 Kbytes
FLASH: Intel 8M *2
```

## Internal SPTGEN FTP Download Example

- 1 Launch your FTP application.
- 2 Enter "bin". The command “bin” sets the transfer mode to binary.
- 3 Get "rom-t" file. The command “get” transfers files from the ZyXEL device to your computer. The name “rom-t” is the configuration filename on the ZyXEL device.
- 4 Edit the "rom-t" file using a text editor (do not use a word processor). You must leave this FTP screen to edit.

**Figure 150** Internal SPTGEN FTP Download Example

```
c:\ftp 192.168.1.1
220 PPP FTP version 1.0 ready at Sat Jan 1 03:22:12 2000
User (192.168.1.1:(none)):
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp>bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> get rom-t
ftp>bye
c:\edit rom-t
(edit the rom-t text file by a text editor and save it)
```

**Note:** You can rename your “rom-t” file when you save it to your computer but it must be named “rom-t” when you upload it to your ZyXEL device.

## Internal SPTGEN FTP Upload Example

- 1 Launch your FTP application.
- 2 Enter "bin". The command “bin” sets the transfer mode to binary.
- 3 Upload your “rom-t” file from your computer to the ZyXEL device using the “put” command. computer to the ZyXEL device.
- 4 Exit this FTP application.

**Figure 151** Internal SPTGEN FTP Upload Example

```
c:\ftp 192.168.1.1
220 PPP FTP version 1.0 ready at Sat Jan 1 03:22:12 2000
User (192.168.1.1:(none)):
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp>bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put rom-t
ftp>bye
```

## Example Internal SPTGEN Menus

This section provides example Internal SPTGEN menus.

**Table 129** Abbreviations Used in the Example Internal SPTGEN Screens Table

ABBREVIATION	MEANING
FIN	Field Identification Number
FN	Field Name
PVA	Parameter Values Allowed
INPUT	An example of what you may enter
*	Applies to the ZyXEL device.

**Table 130** Menu 1 General Setup

/ Menu 1 General Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
10000000 =	Configured	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
10000001 =	System Name	<Str>	= Your Device
10000002 =	Location	<Str>	=
10000003 =	Contact Person's Name	<Str>	=
10000004 =	Route IP	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
10000006 =	Bridge	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0

**Table 131** Menu 3.1 General Ethernet Setup

/ Menu 3.1 General Ethernet Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
30100001 =	Input Protocol filters Set 1		= 2
30100002 =	Input Protocol filters Set 2		= 256
30100003 =	Input Protocol filters Set 3		= 256
30100004 =	Input Protocol filters Set 4		= 256
30100005 =	Input device filters Set 1		= 256
30100006 =	Input device filters Set 2		= 256
30100007 =	Input device filters Set 3		= 256
30100008 =	Input device filters Set 4		= 256
30100009 =	Output protocol filters Set 1		= 256
30100010 =	Output protocol filters Set 2		= 256
30100011 =	Output protocol filters Set 3		= 256

**Table 131** Menu 3.1 General Ethernet Setup (continued)

30100012 =	Output protocol filters Set 4		= 256
30100013 =	Output device filters Set 1		= 256
30100014 =	Output device filters Set 2		= 256
30100015 =	Output device filters Set 3		= 256
30100016 =	Output device filters Set 4		= 256
/ Menu 3.2 TCP/IP and DHCP Ethernet Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
30200001 =	DHCP	<0 (None)   1 (Server)   2 (Relay)>	= 0
30200002 =	Client IP Pool Starting Address		= 192.168.1.33
30200003 =	Size of Client IP Pool		= 32
30200004 =	Primary DNS Server		= 0.0.0.0
30200005 =	Secondary DNS Server		= 0.0.0.0
30200006 =	Remote DHCP Server		= 0.0.0.0
30200008 =	IP Address		= 172.21.2.200
30200009 =	IP Subnet Mask		= 16
30200010 =	RIP Direction	<0 (None)   1 (Both)   2 (In Only)   3 (Out Only)>	= 0
30200011 =	Version	<0 (Rip-1)   1 (Rip-2B)   2 (Rip-2M)>	= 0
30200012 =	Multicast	<0 (IGMP-v2)   1 (IGMP-v1)   2 (None)>	= 2
30200013 =	IP Policies Set 1 (1~12)		= 256
30200014 =	IP Policies Set 2 (1~12)		= 256
30200015 =	IP Policies Set 3 (1~12)		= 256
30200016 =	IP Policies Set 4 (1~12)		= 256
/ Menu 3.2.1 IP Alias Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
30201001 =	IP Alias 1	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
30201002 =	IP Address		= 0.0.0.0
30201003 =	IP Subnet Mask		= 0
30201004 =	RIP Direction	<0 (None)   1 (Both)   2 (In Only)   3 (Out Only)>	= 0

**Table 131** Menu 3.1 General Ethernet Setup (continued)

30201005 =	Version	<0 (Rip-1)   1 (Rip-2B)  2 (Rip-2M)>	= 0
30201006 =	IP Alias #1 Incoming protocol filters Set 1		= 256
30201007 =	IP Alias #1 Incoming protocol filters Set 2		= 256
30201008 =	IP Alias #1 Incoming protocol filters Set 3		= 256
30201009 =	IP Alias #1 Incoming protocol filters Set 4		= 256
30201010 =	IP Alias #1 Outgoing protocol filters Set 1		= 256
30201011 =	IP Alias #1 Outgoing protocol filters Set 2		= 256
30201012 =	IP Alias #1 Outgoing protocol filters Set 3		= 256
30201013 =	IP Alias #1 Outgoing protocol filters Set 4		= 256
30201014 =	IP Alias 2 <0 (No)   1 (Yes)>		= 0
30201015 =	IP Address		= 0.0.0.0
30201016 =	IP Subnet Mask		= 0
30201017 =	RIP Direction	<0 (None)   1 (Both)   2 (In Only)   3 (Out Only)>	= 0
30201018 =	Version	<0 (Rip-1)   1 (Rip-2B)  2 (Rip-2M)>	= 0
30201019 =	IP Alias #2 Incoming protocol filters Set 1		= 256
30201020 =	IP Alias #2 Incoming protocol filters Set 2		= 256
30201021 =	IP Alias #2 Incoming protocol filters Set 3		= 256
30201022 =	IP Alias #2 Incoming protocol filters Set 4		= 256
30201023 =	IP Alias #2 Outgoing protocol filters Set 1		= 256
30201024 =	IP Alias #2 Outgoing protocol filters Set 2		= 256
30201025 =	IP Alias #2 Outgoing protocol filters Set 3		= 256
30201026 =	IP Alias #2 Outgoing protocol filters Set 4		= 256
*/ Menu 3.5 Wireless LAN Setup			

**Table 131** Menu 3.1 General Ethernet Setup (continued)

FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
30500001 =	ESSID		Wireless
30500002 =	Hide ESSID	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
30500003 =	Channel ID	<1 2 3 4 5 6 7  8 9 10 11 12  13>	= 1
30500004 =	RTS Threshold	<0 ~ 2432>	= 2432
30500005 =	FRAG. Threshold	<256 ~ 2432>	= 2432
30500006 =	WEP	<0 (DISABLE)   1 (64-bit WEP)   2 (128-bit WEP)>	= 0
30500007 =	Default Key	<1 2 3 4>	= 0
30500008 =	WEP Key1		=
30500009 =	WEP Key2		=
30500010 =	WEP Key3		=
30500011 =	WEP Key4		=
30500012 =	Wlan Active	<0 (Disable)   1 (Enable)>	= 0
30500013 =	Wlan 4X Mode	<0 (Disable)   1 (Enable)>	= 0
*/ MENU 3.5.1 WLAN MAC ADDRESS FILTER			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
30501001 =	Mac Filter Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
30501002 =	Filter Action	<0 (Allow)   1 (Deny)>	= 0
30501003 =	Address 1		= 00:00:00:00:0 0:00
30501004 =	Address 2		= 00:00:00:00:0 0:00
30501005 =	Address 3		= 00:00:00:00:0 0:00
Continued	...		...
30501034 =	Address 32		= 00:00:00:00:0 0:00

**Table 132** Menu 4 Internet Access Setup

/ Menu 4 Internet Access Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
40000000 =	Configured	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
40000001 =	ISP	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
40000002 =	Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
40000003 =	ISP's Name		= ChangeMe
40000004 =	Encapsulation	<2 (PPPOE)   3 (RFC 1483)   4 (PPPoA )   5 (ENET ENCAP)>	= 2
40000005 =	Multiplexing	<1 (LLC-based)   2 (VC-based)>	= 1
40000006 =	VPI #		= 0
40000007 =	VCI #		= 35
40000008 =	Service Name	<Str>	= any
40000009 =	My Login	<Str>	= test@pqa
40000010 =	My Password	<Str>	= 1234
40000011 =	Single User Account	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
40000012 =	IP Address Assignment	<0 (Static)   1 (Dynamic)>	= 1
40000013 =	IP Address		= 0.0.0.0
40000014 =	Remote IP address		= 0.0.0.0
40000015 =	Remote IP subnet mask		= 0
40000016 =	ISP incoming protocol filter set 1		= 6
40000017 =	ISP incoming protocol filter set 2		= 256
40000018 =	ISP incoming protocol filter set 3		= 256
40000019 =	ISP incoming protocol filter set 4		= 256
40000020 =	ISP outgoing protocol filter set 1		= 256
40000021 =	ISP outgoing protocol filter set 2		= 256
40000022 =	ISP outgoing protocol filter set 3		= 256
40000023 =	ISP outgoing protocol filter set 4		= 256
40000024 =	ISP PPPoE idle timeout		= 0
40000025 =	Route IP	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
40000026 =	Bridge	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0



**Table 132** Menu 4 Internet Access Setup (continued)

40000027 =	ATM QoS Type	<0 (CBR)   1 (UBR)>	= 1
40000028 =	Peak Cell Rate (PCR)		= 0
40000029 =	Sustain Cell Rate (SCR)		= 0
40000030 =	Maximum Burst Size (MBS)		= 0
40000031 =	RIP Direction	<0 (None)   1 (Both)   2 (In Only)   3 (Out Only)>	= 0
40000032 =	RIP Version	<0 (Rip-1)   1 (Rip-2B)   2 (Rip-2M)>	= 0
40000033 =	Nailed-up Connection	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0

**Table 133** Menu 12.1.1 IP Static Route Setup

/ Menu 12.1.1 IP Static Route Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
120101001 =	IP Static Route set #1, Name	<Str>	=
120101002 =	IP Static Route set #1, Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
120101003 =	IP Static Route set #1, Destination IP address		= 0.0.0.0
120101004 =	IP Static Route set #1, Destination IP subnetmask		= 0
120101005 =	IP Static Route set #1, Gateway		= 0.0.0.0
120101006 =	IP Static Route set #1, Metric		= 0
120101007 =	IP Static Route set #1, Private	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
/ Menu 12.1.2 IP Static Route Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
120108001 =	IP Static Route set #8, Name	<Str>	=
120108002 =	IP Static Route set #8, Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
120108003 =	IP Static Route set #8, Destination IP address		= 0.0.0.0
120108004 =	IP Static Route set #8, Destination IP subnetmask		= 0
120108005 =	IP Static Route set #8, Gateway		= 0.0.0.0
120108006 =	IP Static Route set #8, Metric		= 0
120108007 =	IP Static Route set #8, Private	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0

**Table 134** Menu 15 SUA Server Setup

/ Menu 15 SUA Server Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
150000001 =	SUA Server IP address for default port		= 0.0.0.0
150000002 =	SUA Server #2 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000003 =	SUA Server #2 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000004 =	SUA Server #2 Port Start		= 0
150000005 =	SUA Server #2 Port End		= 0
150000006 =	SUA Server #2 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000007 =	SUA Server #3 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000008 =	SUA Server #3 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000009 =	SUA Server #3 Port Start		= 0
150000010 =	SUA Server #3 Port End		= 0
150000011 =	SUA Server #3 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000012 =	SUA Server #4 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000013 =	SUA Server #4 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000014 =	SUA Server #4 Port Start		= 0
150000015 =	SUA Server #4 Port End		= 0
150000016 =	SUA Server #4 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000017 =	SUA Server #5 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000018 =	SUA Server #5 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000019 =	SUA Server #5 Port Start		= 0
150000020 =	SUA Server #5 Port End		= 0
150000021 =	SUA Server #5 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000022 =	SUA Server #6 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)> = 0	= 0
150000023 =	SUA Server #6 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000024 =	SUA Server #6 Port Start		= 0
150000025 =	SUA Server #6 Port End		= 0
150000026 =	SUA Server #6 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000027 =	SUA Server #7 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000028 =	SUA Server #7 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0.0.0.0
150000029 =	SUA Server #7 Port Start		= 0
150000030 =	SUA Server #7 Port End		= 0

**Table 134** Menu 15 SUA Server Setup (continued)

150000031 =	SUA Server #7 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000032 =	SUA Server #8 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000033 =	SUA Server #8 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000034 =	SUA Server #8 Port Start		= 0
150000035 =	SUA Server #8 Port End		= 0
150000036 =	SUA Server #8 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000037 =	SUA Server #9 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000038 =	SUA Server #9 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000039 =	SUA Server #9 Port Start		= 0
150000040 =	SUA Server #9 Port End		= 0
150000041 =	SUA Server #9 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000042 =	SUA Server #10 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000043 =	SUA Server #10 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000044 =	SUA Server #10 Port Start		= 0
150000045 =	SUA Server #10 Port End		= 0
150000046 =	SUA Server #10 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000047 =	SUA Server #11 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000048 =	SUA Server #11 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000049 =	SUA Server #11 Port Start		= 0
150000050 =	SUA Server #11 Port End		= 0
150000051 =	SUA Server #11 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0
150000052 =	SUA Server #12 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 0
150000053 =	SUA Server #12 Protocol	<0 (All)   6 (TCP)   17 (UDP)>	= 0
150000054 =	SUA Server #12 Port Start		= 0
150000055 =	SUA Server #12 Port End		= 0
150000056 =	SUA Server #12 Local IP address		= 0.0.0.0

**Table 135** Menu 21.1 Filter Set #1

/ Menu 21 Filter set #1			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
210100001 =	Filter Set 1, Name	<Str>	=
/ Menu 21.1.1.1 set #1, rule #1			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
210101001 =	IP Filter Set 1, Rule 1 Type	<2 (TCP/IP)>	= 2

**Table 135** Menu 21.1 Filter Set #1 (continued)

210101002 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Active	<0 (No)  1 (Yes)>	= 1
210101003 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Protocol		= 6
210101004 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Dest IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210101005 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Dest Subnet Mask		= 0
210101006 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Dest Port		= 137
210101007 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Dest Port Comp	<0 (none)  1 (equal)  2 (not equal)  3 (less)  4 (greater)>	= 1
210101008 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Src IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210101009 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Src Subnet Mask		= 0
210101010 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Src Port		= 0
210101011 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Src Port Comp	<0 (none)  1 (equal)  2 (not equal)  3 (less)  4 (greater)>	= 0
210101013 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Act Match	<1 (check next)  2 (forward)  3 (drop)>	= 3
210101014 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 1 Act Not Match	<1 (check next)  2 (forward)  3 (drop)>	= 1
/ Menu 21.1.1.2 set #1, rule #2			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
210102001 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Type	<2 (TCP/IP)>	= 2
210102002 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Active	<0 (No)  1 (Yes)>	= 1
210102003 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Protocol		= 6
210102004 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Dest IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210102005 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Dest Subnet Mask		= 0
210102006 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Dest Port		= 138
210102007 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Dest Port Comp	<0 (none)  1 (equal)  2 (not equal)  3 (less)  4 (greater)>	= 1
210102008 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Src IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210102009 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Src Subnet Mask		= 0
210102010 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Src Port		= 0
210102011 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Src Port Comp	<0 (none)  1 (equal)  2 (not equal)  3 (less)  4 (greater)>	= 0

**Table 135** Menu 21.1 Filter Set #1 (continued)

210102013 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Act Match	<1 (check next)  2 (forward)   3 (drop)>	= 3
210102014 =	IP Filter Set 1,Rule 2 Act Not Match	<1 (check next)  2 (forward)   3 (drop)>	= 1

**Table 136** Menu 21.1 Filer Set #2

/ Menu 21.1 filter set #2,			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
210200001 =	Filter Set 2, Nam	<Str>	= NetBIOS_WAN
/ Menu 21.1.2.1 Filter set #2, rule #1			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
210201001 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Type	<0 (none)  2 (TCP/IP)>	= 2
210201002 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Active	<0 (No)  1 (Yes)>	= 1
210201003 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Protocol		= 6
210201004 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Dest IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210201005 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Dest Subnet Mask		= 0
210201006 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Dest Port		= 137
210201007 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Dest Port Comp	<0 (none)  1 (equal)  2 (not equal)  3 (less)  4 (greater)>	= 1
210201008 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Src IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210201009 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Src Subnet Mask		= 0
210201010 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Src Port		= 0
210201011 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Src Port Comp	<0 (none)  1 (equal)  2 (not equal)  3 (less)  4 (greater)>	= 0
210201013 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Act Match	<1 (check next)  2 (forward)  3 (drop)>	= 3
210201014 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 1 Act Not Match	<1 (check next)  2 (forward)  3 (drop)>	= 1
/ Menu 21.1.2.2 Filter set #2, rule #2			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT

**Table 136** Menu 21.1 Filer Set #2 (continued)

210202001 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Type	<0 (none)   2 (TCP/IP)>	= 2
210202002 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
210202003 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Protocol		= 6
210202004 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Dest IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210202005 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Dest Subnet Mask		= 0
210202006 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Dest Port		= 138
210202007 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Dest Port Comp	<0 (none)   1 (equal)   2 (not equal)   3 (less)   4 (greater)>	= 1
210202008 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Src IP address		= 0.0.0.0
210202009 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Src Subnet Mask		= 0
210202010 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Src Port		= 0
210202011 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Src Port Comp	<0 (none)   1 (equal)   2 (not equal)   3 (less)   4 (greater)>	= 0
210202013 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Act Match	<1 (check next)   2 (forward)   3 (drop)>	= 3
210202014 =	IP Filter Set 2, Rule 2 Act Not Match	<1 (check next)   2 (forward)   3 (drop)>	= 1

**Table 137** Menu 23 System Menus

*/ Menu 23.1 System Password Setup			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
230000000 =	System Password		= 1234
*/ Menu 23.2 System security: radius server			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
230200001 =	Authentication Server Configured	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
230200002 =	Authentication Server Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
230200003 =	Authentication Server IP Address		= 192.168.1.32
230200004 =	Authentication Server Port		= 1822

**Table 137** Menu 23 System Menus (continued)

230200005 =	Authentication Server Shared Secret		= 111111111111 111 111111111111 1111
230200006 =	Accounting Server Configured	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
230200007 =	Accounting Server Active	<0 (No)   1 (Yes)>	= 1
230200008 =	Accounting Server IP Address		= 192.168.1.44
230200009 =	Accounting Server Port		= 1823
230200010 =	Accounting Server Shared Secret		= 1234
*/ Menu 23.4 System security: IEEE802.1x			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
230400001 =	Wireless Port Control	<0 (Authentication Required)   1 (No Access Allowed)   2 (No Authentication Required)>	= 2
230400002 =	ReAuthentication Timer (in second)		= 555
230400003 =	Idle Timeout (in second)		= 999
230400004 =	Authentication Databases	<0 (Local User Database Only)   1 (RADIUS Only)   2 (Local, RADIUS)   3 (RADIUS, Local)>	= 1
230400005 =	Key Management Protocol	<0 (8021x)   1 (WPA)   2 (WPA2)>	= 0
230400006 =	Dynamic WEP Key Exchange	<0 (Disable)   1 (64-bit WEP)   2 (128-bit WEP)>	= 0
230400007 =	PSK =		=
230400008 =	WPA Mixed Mode	<0 (Disable)   1 (Enable)>	= 0
230400009 =	Data Privacy for Broadcast/Multicast packets	<0 (TKIP)   1 (WEP)>	= 0
230400010 =	WPA Broadcast/Multicast Key Update Timer		= 0

**Table 138** Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control

/ Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control			
FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
241100001 =	TELNET Server Port		= 23

**Table 138** Menu 24.11 Remote Management Control (continued)

241100002 =	TELNET Server Access	<0 (all)  1 (none)  2 (Lan)  3 (Wan)>	= 0
241100003 =	TELNET Server Secured IP address		= 0.0.0.0
241100004 =	FTP Server Port		= 21
241100005 =	FTP Server Access	<0 (all)  1 (none)  2 (Lan)  3 (Wan)>	= 0
241100006 =	FTP Server Secured IP address		= 0.0.0.0
241100007 =	WEB Server Port		= 80
241100008 =	WEB Server Access	<0 (all)  1 (none)  2 (Lan)  3 (Wan)>	= 0
241100009 =	WEB Server Secured IP address		= 0.0.0.0

## Command Examples

The following are example Internal SPTGEN screens associated with the ZyxEL device's command interpreter commands.

**Table 139** Command Examples

FIN	FN	PVA	INPUT
/ci command (for annex a): wan adsl opencmd			
990000001 =	ADSL OPMD	<0 (glite)  1 (t1.413)  2 (gdm)  3 (multimode)>	= 3
/ci command (for annex B): wan adsl opencmd			
990000001 =	ADSL OPMD	<0 (etsi)  1 (normal)  2 (gdm)  3 (multimode)>	= 3



# Appendix G

## Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers.

- **Name:** This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol:** This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **USER-DEFINED**, the **Port(s)** is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s):** This value depends on the **Protocol**.
  - If the **Protocol** is **TCP, UDP, or TCP/UDP**, this is the IP port number.
  - If the **Protocol** is **USER**, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description:** This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

**Table 140** Examples of Services

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.
AIM	TCP	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service.
AUTH	TCP	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.
BGP	TCP	179	Border Gateway Protocol.
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.
CU-SEEME	TCP/UDP TCP/UDP	7648 24032	A popular videoconferencing solution from White Pines Software.
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (e.g. <a href="http://www.zyxel.com">www.zyxel.com</a> ) to IP numbers.
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.
FINGER	TCP	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.
FTP	TCP TCP	20 21	File Transfer Program, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.
H.323	TCP	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.
HTTP	TCP	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/server protocol for the world wide web.

**Table 140** Examples of Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
HTTPS	TCP	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Multicast Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IMAP4	TCP	143	The Internet Message Access Protocol is used for e-mail.
IMAP4S	TCP	993	This is a more secure version of IMAP4 that runs over SSL.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	TCP	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NetBIOS	TCP/UDP TCP/UDP TCP/UDP TCP/UDP	137 138 139 445	The Network Basic Input/Output System is used for communication between computers in a LAN.
NEW-ICQ	TCP	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	TCP	144	A protocol for news groups.
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	TCP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet INternet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.
POP3	TCP	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
POP3S	TCP	995	This is a more secure version of POP3 that runs over SSL.
PPTP	TCP	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	TCP	512	Remote Command Service.

**Table 140** Examples of Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
REAL_AUDIO	TCP	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	TCP	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	TCP	513	Remote Login.
ROADRUNNER	TCP/UDP	1026	This is an ISP that provides services mainly for cable modems.
RTELNET	TCP	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	TCP	115	The Simple File Transfer Protocol is an old way of transferring files between computers.
SMTP	TCP	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SMTPS	TCP	465	This is a more secure version of SMTP that runs over SSL.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).
SQL-NET	TCP	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSDP	UDP	1900	The Simple Service Discovery Protocol supports Universal Plug-and-Play (UPnP).
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).
TELNET	TCP	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
TFTP	UDP	69	Trivial File Transfer Protocol is an Internet file transfer protocol similar to FTP, but uses the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) rather than TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).
VDOLIVE	TCP UDP	7000 user- defined	A videoconferencing solution. The UDP port number is specified in the application.



# Index

## Numerics

10/100 Mbps Ethernet [30](#)

## A

About This User's Guide [27](#)

AbS [120](#)

ACK Message [116](#)

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) [97](#)

ADPCM [232](#)

ALG [30](#), [109](#)

Alternative Subnet Mask Notation [251](#)

Analog Telephone [29](#)

Analysis-by-Synthesis [120](#)

Any IP [30](#)

note [97](#)

Application Layer Gateway [30](#), [109](#), [119](#)

Auto Firmware Upgrade [32](#)

Auto-crossover [30](#)

Auto-discovering UPnP-enabled Network Devices [190](#)

Automatic Log Out [41](#)

Auto-negotiating [30](#)

Auto-provisioning [32](#)

## B

Bandwidth Borrowing [165](#)

Bandwidth Class [161](#)

Bandwidth Filter [161](#)

Bandwidth Management [30](#), [161](#)

Bridge mode

features [69](#)

IP address [70](#)

procedure [70](#)

reasons to use [69](#)

Buffer, Jitter [31](#)

BYE Request [116](#)

## C

Cable, Ethernet [30](#)

Call Hold [132](#), [134](#)

Call Service Mode [132](#), [134](#)

Call Transfer [133](#), [134](#)

Call Waiting [133](#), [134](#)

Caller ID [232](#)

Certifications [4](#)

Notice [1](#)

viewing [4](#)

Change Password [40](#)

Circuit-switched Telephone Networks [115](#)

Class of Service [121](#)

Class of Service (CoS) [121](#)

Clicks [120](#)

Client Server, SIP [116](#)

Client-server Protocol [116](#)

CNG [232](#)

Codec [120](#)

Codecs [32](#)

Coder/Decoder [120](#)

Comfort Noise Generation [232](#)

Comments [27](#)

Compression [232](#)

Computer [28](#)

Computer Name [199](#)

Computer's IP Address [235](#)

Configuration Upload Successful [229](#)

Connection Wizard

exceptions [49](#)

Contact Information [8](#)

Copyright [3](#)

CoS [121](#)

Crossover Ethernet Cable [30](#)

Customer Support [8](#)

## D

Daytime RFC 867 [206](#)

DDNS. See also Dynamic DNS.

Decoder [120](#)

Default

LAN IP Address [39](#)

Password [40](#)

Default LAN IP address [39](#)

Default Management IP Address [231](#)

Default Management Subnet Mask [231](#)

Default Password [40](#), [231](#)

Default Settings [31](#)

Device Name [198](#)

DHCP [33](#), [199](#), [200](#)

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) [33](#)

DHCP Client [232](#)

DHCP Clients [199](#)

Diagnostic Tools [232](#)

Dialing Type [232](#)

Dial-up Networking User Interface, See PPPoE [34](#)

Differentiated Services [32](#), [121](#)

DiffServ [32](#), [121](#)

Diffserv [232](#)

DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) [121](#)

DiffServ Code Points [121](#)

DiffServ marking rule [122](#)

Dimensions [231](#)

Disclaimer [3](#)

DNS Proxy [233](#)

Domain Name [199](#)

DS Field [121](#)

DS field [121](#)

DSCPs [121](#)

DTMF [120](#)

DTMF Detection [232](#)

Dual-Tone Multi-Frequency [120](#)

Dynamic DNS [33](#), [200](#)

Dynamic DNS Support [33](#)

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol [33](#)

Dynamic Jitter Buffer [31](#)

## E

Echo Cancellation [32](#), [131](#)

Embedded FTP and TFTP Servers [34](#)

Embedded Web Configurator [232](#)

Emergency Numbers [147](#)

Ethernet [49](#), [52](#), [85](#), [232](#)

Ethernet Cable [30](#)

Ethernet Ports [231](#)

Europe Type Call Service Mode [132](#)

## F

Fast Ethernet Interfaces [30](#)

Fax [32](#)

Fax Pass-through [32](#), [232](#)

Fax Tone Detection [32](#), [232](#)

FCC Interference Statement [4](#)

Features [29](#)

Feedback [27](#)

Feeding Voltage [231](#)

Firewall [149](#), [150](#)

Firmware [225](#)

Firmware Upgrades [32](#)

Firmware Upload Error [227](#)

Firmware Upload In Process [227](#)

Flash Key [132](#)

Flashing [132](#)

Foreign Exchange Office [231](#)

Foreign Exchange Station [231](#)

Forwarding Service Requests, See Port Forwarding [33](#)

Frequency Pairs [120](#)

FTP [175](#), [200](#), [232](#), [268](#)

FTP Restrictions [175](#)

FTP Server [34](#)

Full Cone NAT [264](#)

FXO [231](#)

FXS [231](#)

## G

G.168 [32](#), [131](#), [232](#)

G.711 [32](#), [120](#), [232](#)

G.729 [32](#), [120](#), [232](#)

Global [259](#)

Glossary [27](#)

## H

Help [27](#)

Host IDs [249](#)

HTTP [225](#)

Hybrid, Waveform Codec [120](#)

Hypertext Transfer Protocol [225](#)

**I**

Idle Timeout [176](#)  
 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN [122](#)  
 IGA [259](#)  
 IGD 1.0 [186](#)  
 IGMP [33](#)  
 ILA [259](#)  
 Inside [259](#)  
 Inside Global Address [259](#)  
 Inside Local Address [259](#)  
 Install UPnP [186](#)  
     Windows Me [186](#)  
     Windows XP [188](#)  
 Internal SPTGEN [233](#), [269](#)  
     FTP Upload Example [271](#)  
     Points to Remember [270](#)  
     Text File [269](#)  
 Internet Explorer [39](#)  
 Internet Gateway Device [186](#)  
 Internet Group Management Protocol [33](#)  
 Internet Protocol Private Branch Exchange [36](#)  
 Internet Telephony Service Providers (ITSP) [115](#)  
 Internet Telephony Service Providers. See also VoIP Service Providers.  
 IP Addressing [249](#)  
 IP Alias [33](#), [261](#)  
 IP Classes [249](#)  
 IP Multicast [33](#)  
 IP to IP Calls [37](#), [232](#)  
 IP-PBX [36](#), [115](#)  
 ITU-T [131](#)

**J**

Java Permissions [39](#)  
 JavaScripts [39](#)  
 Jitter Buffer [31](#)

**L**

LAN IP Address, Default [39](#)  
 LEDs [34](#)  
 Line Ports [231](#)  
 Listening Port [127](#)  
 Local [259](#)  
 Log Out [41](#)

Logging [34](#)  
 Login [40](#)  
 Loop Start Signaling [232](#)

**M**

Management [232](#)  
 Management IP Address, Default [231](#)  
 Management Subnet Mask, Default [231](#)  
 Many to Many No Overload [262](#)  
 Many to Many Overload [262](#)  
 Many-to-One [262](#)  
 Mapping  
     NAT, Many One-to-One [262](#)  
     NAT, Many-to-Many Overload [262](#)  
     NAT, Many-to-One [262](#)  
     NAT, One-to-One [262](#)  
     NAT, Server [262](#)  
 Maximize Bandwidth Usage [163](#), [168](#), [169](#)  
 Message Waiting Indication [121](#)  
 Modem [28](#), [232](#)  
 modes [69](#)  
     Bridge. See Bridge mode.  
     Router. See Router mode.  
 Mouse Action Sequences [27](#)  
 Multicast [33](#)  
 Multicast Groups [33](#)  
 Multimedia [115](#)  
 Multiple SIP Accounts [31](#)  
 Multiple Telephones [31](#)  
 Multiple Voice Channels [31](#)  
 MWI [121](#)

**N**

NAT [33](#), [259](#), [268](#)  
     and Remote Management [176](#)  
     Application [261](#)  
     Definitions [259](#)  
     Full Cone [264](#)  
     How NAT Works [260](#)  
     Mapping Types [262](#)  
     Server Sets [107](#)  
     Symmetric [267](#)  
     What NAT does [260](#)  
 NAT Mapping [262](#)  
     Many One-to-One [262](#)  
     Many-to-Many Overload [262](#)  
     Many-to-One [262](#)

Server [262](#)  
NAT Routers [119](#)  
NAT Traversal [185](#), [232](#)  
NAT Types [268](#)  
NAT With IP Alias [262](#)  
NAT, Global [259](#)  
NAT, Inside [259](#)  
NAT, Local [259](#)  
NAT, Outside [259](#)  
Netscape Navigator [39](#)  
Network Address Translation (NAT) [33](#), [259](#)  
Network Temporarily Disconnected [227](#), [229](#)  
Networking Terms, Glossary of [27](#)  
Notebook Computer [28](#)  
NTP RFC 1305 [206](#)  
NTP Time Servers [200](#)

## O

OK Response [116](#)  
One-to-One [262](#)  
Online Help [27](#)  
Operation Humidity [231](#)  
Operation Temperature [231](#)  
Outbound Proxy [31](#), [119](#), [120](#)  
Outbound Proxy Server [120](#)  
Outbound Proxy, SIP [120](#)  
Outside [259](#)

## P

Password [40](#), [231](#)  
    Change [40](#)  
Password, Default [31](#)  
PBX Services [115](#)  
PCM [120](#), [232](#)  
PCM G.711 [32](#)  
Peer-to-Peer Calls [141](#)  
Peer-to-peer Calls [37](#)  
Per-Hop Behavior [121](#)  
PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) [122](#)  
Phone Book [141](#)  
Phone Ports [231](#)  
Point to Point Calls [37](#), [232](#)  
Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet [34](#)  
Polarity Reversal [232](#)

Pop-up Blocking [39](#)  
Port Forwarding [33](#), [107](#)  
Port Forwarding, Port Numbers [107](#)  
Port Forwarding, Services [107](#)  
Port Restricted Cone NAT [266](#)  
PPPoE [34](#), [52](#)  
Pre-defined NTP Time Servers List [200](#)  
Prestige [28](#)  
product registration [7](#)  
Proportional Bandwidth Allocation [162](#)  
Protocol Support [232](#)  
Proxy Server, SIP [117](#)  
PSTN [29](#), [120](#)  
PSTN Line [29](#), [31](#), [147](#), [232](#)  
Public Switched Telephone Network [120](#)  
Public Switched Telephone Network. See PSTN.  
Pulse Code Modulation [120](#)  
Pulse Dialing [120](#)

## Q

QoS [32](#), [121](#), [232](#)  
Quality of Service [32](#), [121](#)  
Questions [27](#)  
Quick Start Guide [27](#)

## R

Real time Transport Protocol [118](#)  
Redirect Server, SIP [118](#)  
Register Server, SIP [118](#)  
registration  
    product [7](#)  
Related Documentation [27](#)  
Remote Management [175](#), [232](#)  
Remote Management and NAT [176](#)  
Remote Management Limitations [175](#)  
REN [31](#)  
Required Bandwidth [120](#)  
Reset [228](#)  
Reset Button [31](#)  
Resetting the Time [201](#)  
Resetting to Factory Defaults [41](#)  
Restricted Cone NAT [265](#)  
RFC 1305 [206](#)  
RFC 1631 [259](#)



RFC 1889 [118](#), [232](#)  
 RFC 1890 [232](#)  
 RFC 2327 [232](#)  
 RFC 2516 [232](#)  
 RFC 3261 [232](#)  
 RFC 3489 [119](#), [232](#)  
 RFC 3842 [121](#)  
 RFC 867 [206](#)  
 RFC 868 [206](#)  
 Ringer Equivalence Number [31](#)  
 Ringing Voltage [231](#)  
 RoadRunner [34](#)  
 Router [28](#)  
 Router mode
 

- IP address [70](#)
- procedure [70](#)
- reasons to use [69](#)

 RTCP (RFC 1890) [232](#)  
 RTP [118](#), [232](#)

## S

Safety Warnings [6](#)  
 Scheduler [163](#), [168](#), [169](#)  
 SDP (RFC 2327) [232](#)  
 Server [28](#), [262](#), [263](#)  
 Server, Outbound Proxy [120](#)  
 Service Request Forwarding, See Port Forwarding [33](#)  
 Session Initiation Protocol [29](#), [115](#)  
 Silence Suppression [32](#), [131](#), [232](#)  
 Silent Packets [131](#)  
 Single User Account [268](#)  
 SIP [29](#), [115](#)  
 SIP (RFC 3261) version 2 [232](#)  
 SIP Accounts [31](#), [115](#)  
 SIP ACK Message [116](#)  
 SIP ALG [30](#), [109](#), [119](#)  
 SIP Application Layer Gateway [30](#), [109](#)  
 SIP BYE Request [116](#)  
 SIP Call Progression [116](#)  
 SIP Client [117](#)  
 SIP Client Server [116](#)  
 SIP Identities [115](#)  
 SIP INVITE Request [116](#)  
 SIP Number [116](#)  
 SIP OK Response [116](#)  
 SIP Outbound Proxy [120](#)  
 SIP Proxy Server [117](#)

SIP Redirect Server [118](#)  
 SIP Register Server [118](#)  
 SIP Servers [116](#)  
 SIP Service Domain [116](#)  
 SIP URI [115](#)  
 SIP User Agent [117](#)  
 Sound Quality [120](#)  
 Speed Dial [141](#), [232](#)  
 Stateful Inspection [149](#)  
 Static Routes [233](#)  
 Storage Humidity [231](#)  
 Storage Temperature [231](#)  
 Straight-through Ethernet Cable [30](#)  
 STUN [31](#), [119](#), [232](#)  
 SUA (Single User Account) [268](#)  
 SUA Server Set [268](#)  
 Subnet Masks [250](#)  
 Subnetting [250](#)  
 Suggestions [27](#)  
 Supplementary Phone Services [131](#)  
 Supporting Disk [27](#)  
 Switch [28](#)  
 Symmetric NAT [267](#)  
 Symmetric NAT, Outgoing [268](#)  
 Syntax Conventions [27](#)  
 Syslog [34](#), [232](#)  
 system modes. See modes.  
 System Name [199](#)  
 System Parameter Table Generator [269](#)  
 System Timeout [176](#)

## T

Telephone [28](#)  
 Telnet [232](#)  
 Text File Format [269](#)  
 TFTP [232](#)  
 TFTP Restrictions [175](#)  
 TFTP Server [34](#)  
 Three-Way Conference [133](#), [134](#)  
 Time
 

- Resetting [201](#)

 Time RFC 868 [206](#)  
 Tip/ring Polarity Reversal [232](#)  
 ToS [32](#), [121](#), [232](#)  
 Touch Tone® [120](#)  
 Tracing [34](#)  
 Trademarks [3](#)

Triangle Route Solutions [152](#)  
Trigger Port Forwarding [108](#)  
    Process [108](#)  
Type Of Service [121](#)  
Type of Service [32](#)

Note [7](#)  
Waveform Codec [120](#)  
Web Configurator [39](#)  
Web Configurator Online Help [27](#)  
Weight [231](#)

## U

UIC [186](#)  
Uniform Resource Identifier [115](#)  
Universal Plug and Play [33](#), [185](#)  
    Application [185](#)  
    Security issues [185](#)  
Universal Plug and Play Forum [186](#)  
Universal Plug and Play. See also UPnP.  
UPnP [185](#), [198](#)  
    Auto-discovery [190](#)  
    Installing Example [186](#)  
UPnP Certification [186](#)  
USA Type Call Service Mode [134](#)  
Use NAT [119](#)  
User Agent, SIP [117](#)  
User Guide Feedback [27](#)  
User Name [204](#)

## V

VAD [32](#), [131](#), [232](#)  
Virtual Local Area Network [122](#)  
VLAN [122](#)  
VLAN Group [122](#)  
VLAN Tag [122](#)  
Voice Activity Detection [32](#), [131](#), [232](#)  
Voice Channels [31](#)  
Voice Coding [32](#), [120](#)  
Voice Functions [232](#)  
Voice Mail [115](#)  
Voice over IP [29](#), [115](#)  
VoIP [29](#)  
VoIP Service Provider [36](#), [115](#)  
Voltage [231](#)

## W

Warranty [7](#)